Using This Manual

Objective Search

Using Handset Phone Number/Mail Address

Checking Handset Number

Check your phone number on handset.

My Phone Number ⇒ Page 3-3

Customizing Mail Address

Customizing handset address can help reduce spam.

Customizing Handset Address ⇒ Page 4-3

Customizing Handset

Ringtone

Select a music file, movie file or Chaku-Uta® from ringtone settings.

Ringtone ⇒ Page 13-11

Downloading Chaku-Uta®

Download your favorite songs from the Chaku-Uta® site.

Obtaining Music and Videos ⇒ Page 8-3

Understanding Basics

Basic Operations

Using keys and accessing functions.

Softkeys and Multi Selector ⇒ Page xi
Menu Operations ⇒ Page 2-2

Making Calls

Make voice calls and Video Calls. Use call functions such as Speed Dial or Answering Machine.

Voice Call ⇒ Page 3-4
Video Call ⇒ Page 3-7

Using Advanced Features

Watching TV

Watch One Seg Digital TV on handset. No additional fees required.

TV ⇒ Page 6-2

Listening to Music

Use Media Player to listen to downloaded music.

Media Player ⇒ Page 8-2

Saving Address to Handset

Saving your new address to My Details is convenient for exchanging information with others.

My Details ⇒ Page 3-12

Sharing Address with Friends

Share your new address by sending a message to multiple addresses simultaneously.

Sending Messages ⇒ Page 4-4, Page 4-6
Adding Recipients ⇒ Page 4-13

Sharing Address via Infrared

Share your e-mail address by infrared transfer. Save your e-mail address prior to transfer.

Infrared ⇒ Page 12-14

Wallpaper

Set images captured with handset camera as wallpaper.

Wallpaper ⇒ Page 2-7

Changing Font Size

Change font size for menus and web pages. Font color pattern can also be changed.

Setting Font Size ⇒ Page 13-5, Page 13-21

Setting Twinkle Light

Set or create your own Twinkle Light that notifies you of incoming calls, messages, etc.

Twinkle Light ⇒ Page 13-6

Text Entry

Enter text when creating Phone Book entries or messages.

Text Entry ⇒ Page 2-10

S! Mail/SMS

Select S! Mail or SMS according to your purpose.

S! Mail ⇒ Page 4-4
SMS ⇒ Page 4-6

Accessing the Mobile Internet

Use Yahoo! Keitai to access Mobile Internet sites tailored for SoftBank customers.

Yahoo! Keitai ⇒ Page 5-3

Digital Camera/Digital Video

Shoot pictures and videos with handset camera.

Taking Pictures ⇒ Page 7-3
Recording Videos ⇒ Page 7-5

Using Handset as a Gaming Device

Play preinstalled S! Appli games or download games from Yahoo! Keitai.

S! Appli ⇒ Page 8-8

Using Handset as a Wallet

Payments are quick and easy without needing small change. Hold handset up to a reader/writer at checkout counters.

Osaifu-Keitai® ⇒ Page 9-10

Feature Search

830T Features

One Seg TV

Handset supports One Seg Digital TV for mobile phones and information terminals. You can also browse data broadcasts and use view timer.

➡Page 6-2

Bluetooth®

Files can be transferred using Bluetooth® communication.

➡Page 12-5

SoftBank Features

Yahoo! Keitai Sites

A special portal site for SoftBank handsets is available to enhance your Internet browsing experience.

➡Page 5-3

Graphic Mail/Feeling Mail

Send Graphic Mail (HTML mail) or Feeling Mail.

➡Page 4-5

Convenient Features

Phone Book/S! Addressbook Back-up

Save contact information to Phone Book and back up data on S! Addressbook Server.

➡Page 2-16, Page 12-12

Alarm/Event Schedule

Use the alarm to wake you in the morning. Save and manage event schedule on Calendar that can be interfaced with phone/mail functions.

➡Page 9-4, Page 9-18

PC-related Features

PC Site Browser

View PC-based websites with PC Site Browser.

➡Page 5-4

Card Reader Mode

for use with PC

Use the USB cable to connect handset to a PC and access microSD/microSDHC memory card data from the PC.

➡Page 2-24, Page 12-9

1.96 Megapixel Camera

Handset is equipped with a 1.96 megapixel camera.

➡Page 7-2

microSD/microSDHC Memory Card

Handset supports compact high-capacity microSD/microSDHC memory cards. This makes exchanging files with a PC quick and easy.

➡Page 2-24

Electronic Books

Use BookSurfing® and e-Book Viewer to read e-books.

➡Page 9-24

S! Town/S! Loop/S! Information Channel

Enjoy these SoftBank communication services.

➡Page 9-23, Page 10-2

S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk

These two functions facilitate communication. Send your mood/availability to your friends and check their statuses, or talk to a group of people.

➡Page 10-3, Page 10-6

S! GPS Navi

Use the GPS function to check your position on a map. This function can also guide you to your destination.

➡Page 9-14

Barcode Reader

Access a variety of information such as e-mail addresses and URLs using QR codes.

➡Page 9-25

Voice Recorder

Use handset as a recorder. Recordings can be sent via mail and set as ringtone.

➡Page 9-9

Optional Services

A complete line of services, including Call Forwarding and Voice Mail.

➡Page 3-10

Media Player

for use with PC

Play music files on handset.

➡Page 8-2, Page 12-8

Contents

10 Communication Services

11 Security

12 File Transfer/Backup

13 Customization

14 Appendix

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 830T handset.

- To ensure proper usage, read this manual thoroughly before using SoftBank 830T handset.
- After reading this manual, retain it for later reference.
- If this manual is lost or damaged, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-48).
- Accessible services may be limited because of contract conditions.

SoftBank 830T handset is compatible with the 3G and GSM systems.

Caution

- Unauthorized copying of any part of this manual is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.
- Steps have been taken to ensure the accuracy of descriptions in this manual. If you find inaccurate or missing information, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (page 14-48).

User Guide (Japanese), Start Book (Japanese) and First Step Guide included in the package are also available online from SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website:
http://www.softbank.jp/mb/r/support/830t/

Package Contents

● Handset	● Battery (TSBBM1)	● Battery Cover
● Start Book (Japanese)	● User Guide (Japanese)	● First Step Guide
● Outer Panel	● Inner Sheets	● Frame Remover*

* Complimentary sample not available for purchase.

- Use only SoftBank specified AC Charger (sold separately) to charge battery.
- For information about AC Charger and other accessories, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (page 14-48).
- Battery is available for separate purchase.
- Handset accepts microSD/microSDHC Memory Card (not included). Purchase microSD/microSDHC Memory Card to use related functions.
- microSD/microSDHC Memory Card is referred to as "memory card" in this manual.
- USB cable (not included) can be used with handset. Purchase a SoftBank specified USB cable to use related functions.

Using This Manual

In this manual, SoftBank 830T is referred to as "handset."

Chapters

Chapter 1 "Getting Started": Basic handset information.
Chapter 2 "Basic Operations": Basic handset operations.
Chapters 3 to 12: Handset functions. Each chapter starts with basic operation descriptions, followed by advanced operation descriptions.
Chapter 13 "Customization": Handset settings.
Chapter 14 "Appendix": Default settings, Index, etc.

More Features

Creating Messages

(▶ page 4-13)

⋮

Advanced features are listed under this icon. Refer to the indicated page to access "Advanced Features" at the end of the chapter.

Message Creation Settings

(▶ page 13-14)

- Add Recipients to Simple Input List

⋮

Available settings are listed here. Go to indicated page in Chapter 13 "Customization" for description.

Symbols

➡, ➡ and ▶ navigate you to the next action/item.
Press Center Key ■ to confirm your selection. Some operations are described in an abbreviated format.

Screenshots and Keys

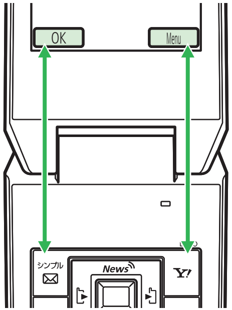
Screenshots may differ from actual appearance. Key graphics are simplified to facilitate explanation.

Japanese Functions & Services

When "(Japanese)" appears in a title, Japanese ability is required to use full range of function and service.

Softkeys

Use Softkeys to perform operations indicated at the bottom of Display.



- Press ✉ to select OK.
- Press Y! to access Option menu.

> - Softkey operations vary by the current function.
> - In this manual, Softkey operations are described as below.
>   ➡ ✉ (OK) / ➡ ✉ / ➡ Y!

Multi Selector

The following notations are used to indicate Multi Selector operations.

Notation/Operation	Function
Press up	Enables Active Window operations* Increases volume Moves cursor up
Press down	Accesses Phone Book* Decreases volume Moves cursor down
Press left	Accesses Dialed* Moves cursor left
Press right	Accesses Received* Moves cursor right
Press center	Accesses Main Menu Confirms the selected item or performs the selected operation Acts as the camera shutter-release

* Functions accessible from Standby can be changed by changing Multi Selector shortcuts (page 2-3).

Safety Precautions

- To ensure proper usage, be sure to read the Safety Precautions thoroughly before using your handset. Always keep this manual available for future reference.
- Be sure to follow the safety information contained in the instruction manuals and indicated on the product to prevent injury to the user and other persons, as well as damage to property.
- When a child uses handset, it is recommended that a parent or guardian reads the instruction manuals thoroughly and provides proper instructions to the child.
- The following describes the meaning of safety symbols and signal words. Be sure to understand their meanings before proceeding to read this manual.

Pictographs

Pictograph	Meaning
⚠ Danger	Indicates an imminently hazardous operation that could result in death or serious injury[1] of the user.
⚠ Warning	Indicates a potentially hazardous operation that could result in death or serious injury[1] of the user.
⚠ Caution	Indicates a potentially hazardous operation that could result in minor or moderate injury[2] to the user or damage to property[3].

1 Serious injury includes loss of sight, wounds, high temperature burns, low temperature burns (burns causing reddish areas, blistering and other damage to the skin as a result of heat exceeding the body temperature contacting your skin for a prolonged time), electric shock, fractures and poisoning requiring hospitalization or long-term medical treatment.

2 Injury includes wounds, burns and electric shock not requiring hospitalization or long-term medical treatment.

3 Damage to property includes extensive damage to homes and household property, as well as livestock and pets.

Symbols

Symbol	Meaning
⃠ Prohibited	⃠ indicates a prohibited action. The prohibited action is indicated graphically or described in text in or near the symbol.
❗ Compulsory	❗ indicates a compulsory action that must be carried out. The compulsory action is indicated graphically or described in text in or near the symbol.

Limitation of Liability

- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from natural disasters such as earthquakes, lightning, storms and floods, as well as fires through no fault of SoftBank and Toshiba, acts by third parties, other accidents, improper use by the user, whether intentionally or negligently, or use under other abnormal conditions.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for incidental damages arising out of the use or inability to use the product, including, but not limited to, corruption or loss of data, lost business revenue or suspension of business operations.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from improper use not conforming to the instructions in the instruction manuals.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from malfunctions caused by use in combination with connection equipment or software that is not authorized for use by SoftBank and Toshiba.
- Image data recorded with the camera, downloaded data and other data may be corrupted or lost due to malfunction, repair or other improper handling of the product. SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for the restoration of corrupted or lost data, as well as any damages or lost revenue and profits.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for corruption or loss of stored data resulting from failures or malfunctions of the product, regardless of the cause. Be sure to keep a separate memo of important data to limit damage caused by data corruption or loss to a minimum.

⚠ Danger

No disassembly

Do not disassemble, modify or repair handset, battery, charger (sold separately) or Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately)

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire, electric shock, injury or malfunction. Modification of handset is prohibited by Japanese Radio Law. For repair, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 14-48).

No flames

Do not charge, use or leave handset, battery, charger (sold separately) or Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) in hot places such as near a fire or heater

If they are exposed to water, do not dry them artificially in heating equipment (microwave oven, etc.)

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction

⚠ Danger

Keep water away

Do not expose handset, battery, charger (sold separately) and Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) to fluids such as water, perspiration or seawater

Do not leave them outdoors, in a bathroom or wherever water or any other fluid is used

Do not place them near cups, vases or other containers of fluids

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire, electric shock or malfunction. If handset is dropped accidentally in water or any other fluid, immediately turn off handset and remove the battery. If handset, battery or charger is exposed to fluids such as water during charging, remove the power plug from the outlet immediately. Do not charge the wet battery. If the battery gets wet, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 14-48).

Prohibited

Do not use excessive force when inserting the battery into handset or connecting handset to the charger (sold separately)

Do not connect any cords with reverse polarity

Doing so may cause the battery to leak, rupture, overheat or catch fire, as well as cause electric shock or malfunction.

Prohibited

Do not touch the battery terminal (metal parts) with any metal objects (necklace, hairpin, etc.)

Doing so may cause the battery to overheat, rupture or catch fire, as well as the metal object to overheat.

Compulsory

Do not use a battery other than one supplied with or designated for handset

Do not use the battery for any other handset

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.

Compulsory

Use the charger (sold separately) designated for handset to charge the battery

Use the charger (sold separately) only for charging handset's battery

Failing to do so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.

Compulsory

If electrolyte fluid leaking from the battery comes into contact with your skin or clothes, wash it immediately with clean water as this may hurt your body

And if it gets into your eyes, do not rub them, and have them immediately treated by an ophthalmologist after washing them with clean water

If the fluid sticks to the equipment, wipe it out without touching it directly

If the fluid is left as it is, your skin may get irritated or there may be fear of losing your sight.

⚠ Warning

Prohibited

Do not use handset while driving
Do not make or receive a call and do not use other functions (messaging, game, camera, TV, video, music, Mobile Light, etc.)

Doing so may cause a traffic accident. Use of handset while driving is prohibited by law. Before using handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking is permitted.

Compulsory

Be sure to turn off your SoftBank handset before entering places such as gas stations where flammable gases may be produced
Also do not charge handset in those places

The gases may be ignited.

Be sure to turn off handset before using Osaifu-Keitai® compatible reader/writer within gas stations, etc. (When IC Card Lock is set, turn off handset after unlocking the setting.)

Prohibited

Do not swing handset by its strap, USB cable (sold separately), Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (sold separately) or Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately)

Doing so may cause an injury, accident or damage.

Compulsory

Turn off handset while you are near any precision electronic equipment

Radio waves may adversely affect the operation of electronic equipment. Examples of such equipment: medical electronic equipment such as cardiac pacemakers and hearing aids or fire alarms and automatic doors. If you use medical electronic equipment, consult with the equipment manufacturer or distributor about the influence of radio waves.

Unplug power cable

Remove the power plug from the outlet if AC Charger (sold separately) is not to be used for a long period of time or before cleaning

Failing to do so may cause an electric shock, fire or malfunction.

Compulsory

Turn off handset wherever its use is prohibited such as on an aircraft

Failing to do so may adversely affect the operation of electronic equipment and cause an accident.

Compulsory

Check your surroundings to confirm that it is safe to make/receive calls, send/receive messages, take pictures, record videos or watch TV

Failing to do so may cause you to trip over or cause a traffic accident.

⚠ Warning

Compulsory

Do not use handset with any power voltage other than the specified voltage

Doing so may cause a fire. The power voltages are 100 to 240 V AC for AC Charger (sold separately) and 12 or 24 V DC (for a negative ground car only) for In-Car Charger (sold separately).

Compulsory

Wipe away any dust on the plug of AC Charger (sold separately) with a dry cloth after removing the plug from the outlet

Dust on the plug or outlet may cause a fire.

Compulsory

Follow the instructions below when installing and wiring in-vehicle devices

- **Make sure that devices do not interfere with driving and safety equipment such as airbags**
- **Make sure that wires are not caught in seatbelt buckles, doors or other moving parts**

Any wire caught around a foot, brake pedal, accelerator pedal, etc. may interfere with driving and cause a traffic accident. If any part of an in-vehicle device drops onto the floor, it may startle you into abrupt braking or steering, leading to a traffic accident.

Compulsory

When thunder is heard outside, stop using handset immediately

Turn off handset and do not touch it

Failing to do so may attract lightning and cause electric shock. When thunder is heard, stop using handset and move to a safe place such as inside a building.

Compulsory

If the battery fails to charge in the specified time, stop charging immediately

Failing to do so may cause overheating, rupturing or fire. Contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 14-48).

Compulsory

When inserting the plug of AC Charger (sold separately) into an AC household outlet, make sure that a metal strap or any other metal object does not touch the plug

Failing to do so may cause electric shock, short circuit or fire.

⚠ Warning

Compulsory

If something unusual happens to handset, battery or charger (sold separately); for example, it emits smoke or an unusual odor or is damaged, perform the following steps immediately

1. If the battery is charging, unplug AC Charger (sold separately) from the AC household outlet or unplug In-Car Charger (sold separately) from the cigarette lighter socket.
2. Make sure that handset is not hot, then turn it off and remove the battery.

Failing to do so and continuing use (charging) may cause the battery to overheat, rupture or catch fire or handset to overheat. If something unusual happens, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 14-48).

Prohibited

Do not drop handset or battery or subject it to excessive shock

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.

Prohibited

Do not sit down with handset in your trousers pocket

Excess weight may damage Display, battery or other parts resulting in overheating, fire or injury.

Compulsory

If handset is used near an implanted cardiac pacemaker, defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, radio waves may interfere with such a device or equipment

Observe the following guidelines

1. If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator, carry and use handset at a distance of at least 22 centimeters away from the implanted device.
2. Turn off handset in crowded places such as packed trains because a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator may be nearby. Radio waves can interfere with the operation of a cardiac pacemaker or other medical device.
3. Follow the precautions below in medical institutions.
   - Do not bring handset into an operating room, intensive care unit or coronary care unit.
   - Turn off handset in a hospital ward.
   - Turn off handset in a lobby or other location close to medical equipment.
   - Observe the instructions of individual medical institutions and do not use handset in or bring it into prohibited areas.

⚠ Warning

4. When using electronic medical devices other than an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator outside of medical institutions (such as at home), consult with the individual medical device manufacturer about the possible influence of radio waves.

The above information conforms to "The Guidelines on Use of Mobile Phones and Other Devices to Prevent Electromagnetic Wave Interference with Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan), as well as refers to "The Investigative Research Report on the Influence of Electromagnetic Waves on Medical Equipment" (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

Prohibited

Do not use AC Charger (sold separately) with any power supply other than a 100 to 240 V AC household power supply

Doing so may result in a fire, as well as cause the charger to overheat, catch fire or malfunction.

⚠ Caution

Prohibited

Do not use or leave handset or battery in places where it will be exposed to direct sunlight or in hot places such as inside a car in the sun

Doing so may cause overheating, fire or malfunction.

Prohibited

Keep handset, battery, charger (sold separately), Outer Panels, Inner Sheets, Frame and Frame Remover away from infants and small children

Failing to do so may result in the battery or memory card being accidentally swallowed or cause damage or injury.

Prohibited

Make sure that the terminals (metal parts) of the charger (sold separately) do not come into contact with wires or other metal objects

Failing to do so may cause overheating or burns.

Prohibited

Do not pull the cord when unplugging AC Charger (sold separately) or In-Car Charger (sold separately) from an AC household outlet or socket

Damage to the cord may cause electric shock, overheating or fire. Hold the plug when unplugging AC Charger (sold separately) or In-Car Charger (sold separately).

Prohibited

Do not pull, bend with excessive force or twist the cords of AC Charger (sold separately) and In-Car Charger
Do not damage or modify them
Do not place objects on them
Do not apply heat and keep them away from heaters

Damage to a cord may cause electric shock, overheating or fire.

No wet hands

Do not plug or unplug AC Charger (sold separately) with wet hands

Doing so may cause electric shock or malfunction.

No wet hands

Do not attach or remove Outer Panel and Inner Sheet with wet hands

Doing so may cause electric shock or malfunction.

Prohibited

Keep magnetic cards away from handset and make sure that a magnetic card is not trapped when closing handset

Failing to do so may cause the magnetic data on a cash card, credit card, telephone card or floppy disk to be lost.

⚠ Caution

Prohibited
Do not use handset in a vehicle if it affects in-vehicle electronic devices
Use of handset in some types of vehicles may, in some rare cases, affect in-vehicle electronic devices and interfere with safe driving.

Prohibited
Do not place handset on an unstable or unlevel surface
Doing so may result in handset falling and causing injury or malfunction. Be particularly careful when vibration is set.

Prohibited
Do not dispose of the used battery with ordinary garbage
Insulate the terminal with tape and then dispose of the used battery separately from ordinary garbage or take it to your nearest SoftBank Shop. Be sure to observe local regulations on the separate collection of used batteries, wherever applicable.

Prohibited
Do not touch handset with sweaty hands or place it into a pocket of sweaty clothes
Sweat and humidity may erode the internal components of handset and cause overheating or malfunction.

Prohibited
Do not use In-Car Charger (sold separately) when the car engine is not running
Doing so may result in a flat battery.

Compulsory
If the fuse for In-Car Charger (sold separately) blows, replace it with a designated fuse
Replacing the fuse with other than a designated fuse may cause overheating and fire.
For details on replacing the fuse, refer to the instruction manual of In-Car Charger (sold separately).

Compulsory
Use handset in well-lighted places and with an appropriate distance between your eyes and its screen when you watch TV
Failing to do so may cause decreased vision.

⚠ Caution

If your skin becomes irritated, immediately stop using handset and consult with a dermatologist

Compulsory

The following materials and surface treatments have been used for handset. Some of these materials may cause itching, irritation, eczema, etc. in some rare cases depending on the individual's constitution and physical condition.

Part	Material (Surface Treatment)
Outer housing (front face of Display side)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Outer housing (Frame, hinge cover)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)*
Outer housing (keypad side, external side of lower section)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Outer housing (Outer Panel)	Acrylic resin (in-mold UV foil), PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Outer housing (battery cover)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Display panel	Tempered glass with polyester film (UV cured acrylic processing)
External Display panel	Acrylic resin (in-mold UV foil)
External panel of lower section (battery cover side)	PET film
Clearance retainer on internal side of lower section	Acrylic urethane resin
Keypad	PC resin (PET sheet)
Side Keys	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Camera panel	Acrylic resin
Infrared Port	Acrylic resin
External Device Port cover	Elastomer resin, PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Earphone Microphone Jack cover	Elastomer resin, PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Charger Terminals	Stainless steel (gold plating, nickel undercoat)
Screws	Steel (nickel coating)
Earpiece plate	Acrylic resin
Panel attachment spring	Stainless steel
Light shielding panel, earpiece cover	Stainless steel
Inner Sheet	PET film
Frame Remover	ABS resin

* PC resin (discontinuous deposition, UV cured acrylic coating) for Black and Gold models

⚠ Caution

Compulsory

Before using handset, make sure that no metal objects (such as pins) are stuck to the earpiece or speaker

Failing to do so may result in a metal object causing an ear or hand injury, etc.

Compulsory

If you have a weak heart, be careful with the call vibration and ringtone volume settings

Failing to do so may startle you and may be harmful to your heart.

Prohibited

Do not use Mobile Light for purposes other than taking pictures, recording videos or lighting

Doing so may harm the eyes and cause impaired vision or other injury.

Prohibited

Make sure things like paper, cloth and bedding are not placed on handset during a Video Call or while charging using a USB connection, In-Car Charger (sold separately), AC Charger (sold separately), etc.

Failing to do so may cause overheating, fire, burns or malfunction.

Compulsory

Do not turn the volume up too high while using Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately)

Do not use Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) continuously for long periods of time

Exposure to high sound levels may impair hearing and prolonged use may cause hearing defect regardless of the volume level. Sound leakage may annoy other people and surrounding sounds may not be heard clearly resulting in an accident.

Prohibited

Do not insert objects other than the memory card into Memory Card Slot

Doing so may cause overheating, electric shock or malfunction.

Prohibited

Keep your face away from Memory Card Slot when inserting or removing the memory card

Keep the memory card out of the reach of small children

If the memory card is let go of suddenly, it may fly out and hit your face resulting in injury.

Prohibited

Do not subject the memory card to vibration or shock or remove it from the slot or turn off handset while data is being written to or read from the memory card

Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.

⚠ Caution

Prohibited
Use only the memory card supported by handset
Failing to do so may cause data loss or malfunction.
Handset supports microSD memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 2 GB, and microSDHC memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 8 GB (as of September 2008).

Prohibited
Do not let children use cables such as USB cable (sold separately), Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (sold separately) and Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) unsupervised and keep cables out of infant's reach
An injury may be caused if, for instance, the cable is wrapped around a neck.

Prohibited
Do not point the infrared beam at anyone's eye during infrared communication
Doing so may cause eye damage.

Prohibited
Do not use Mobile Light close to eyes
Doing so may cause eye damage. Be especially careful not to take pictures or record videos with Mobile Light too close to the eyes of infants.

Prohibited
Do not use excessive force when inserting or removing USIM Card
Doing so may cause a malfunction. Be careful not to injure a hand or finger when removing the card.

Prohibited
Use only a USIM Card designated for handset
Failing to do so may cause data loss or malfunction.

Compulsory
Be careful not to trap your fingers or objects when closing handset and not to trap your fingers in the hinge when opening handset
Failing to do so may cause injury or damage to the LCD Display.

Prohibited
Do not use handset without Outer Panel
Do not use handset in damaged condition
Doing so may cause an injury, accident, damage or malfunction.

Prohibited
Do not modify or repair Outer Panel
Performance may not be guaranteed.

Compulsory
Be sure to use Frame Remover when removing Outer Panel, Inner Sheet and Frame
Failing to do so may cause an injury, accident or damage.

Prohibited
Do not remove the polyester film from Display
Using handset without the polyester film to protect against shattering of the reinforced glass may result in an injury if Display is damaged.

General Notes

Using Your Handset

- Handset employs radio waves. Signals may be disrupted even within service areas if you are indoors, underground, inside a tunnel or inside a vehicle. If you move to a location with poor signal reception, a call or the TV image/sound may be suddenly cut off.
- When using handset in public places, take care not to annoy other people around you. Use of handset is prohibited in some public places such as in theaters or on buses and trains.
- Handset is a radio transceiver under Japanese Radio Law. You may be requested to submit handset for inspection based on this law.
- Use of handset near a landline phone, TV or radio may affect the image and sound quality of the equipment.
- Handset employs a digital system to maintain a high level of communication quality even at very low signal levels. However, calls may be suddenly cut off when the signal strength becomes too weak.
- The digital system provides a high level of privacy protection. However, the possibility of someone eavesdropping on your conversation cannot be ruled out as long as radio waves are used.
- Data stored on handset may be corrupted or lost on the following occasions.
  - · Handset is used improperly.
  - · Handset is exposed to static electricity or electric noise.
  - · Handset is turned off during operation.
  - · The battery is completely discharged.
  - · Handset malfunctions or is sent for repairs.

  SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for the corruption or loss of stored data. Be sure to keep a separate memo of important data to limit damage caused by data corruption or loss to a minimum.
- Be sure to charge the battery before using handset for the first time or if handset has not been used for a long time. When the battery is stored for a long time, it discharges over time even if it is not used.
- Before using a memory card, read the instruction manual of the memory card thoroughly to ensure safe and proper operation.
- When handset is used for extended periods of time, especially in high temperature conditions, its surface could become hot. Please use caution when touching handset under such conditions.
- When certain items are taken out of the country, documentation may be required to certify that the export of the items is not controlled, prohibited, or restricted by the Export Trade Control Order and Foreign Exchange Order. Basically, no such documentation is required if you take handset out of the country and bring it back for the purpose of personal use when going on vacations or short business trips. In some cases, however, an export permit may be required if handset is to be used by or transferred to anyone else.

  Furthermore, a US government export permit may be required when taking handset to countries for which the US government has imposed export restrictions (Cuba, North Korea, Iran, Sudan, Syria).

  For details on export laws, regulations and procedures, refer to the Web page of the Security Export Control Policy Division of the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry.
- If you use a hearing aid, handset usage may interfere with hearing aid performance. If there is any interference, consult with the manufacturer or distributor of the hearing aid.

Inside Vehicles

- Do not use handset while driving. Use of handset while driving is prohibited by law.
  Talking on handset using Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) while driving may be subject to penalties in some prefectures.
- Before using handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking or stopping is permitted.

Aboard Aircraft

- Do not use handset on an aircraft. Do not turn handset on while you are on an aircraft.

Handling Basics

- Do not use handset in extreme temperatures, direct sunlight and humid or dusty places.
- Do not drop handset or subject it to excessive shock.
- To clean handset, wipe it with a dry soft cloth. Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene or other solvents. Doing so may cause discoloration and remove the printed logo.
- Avoid exposing handset to rain, snow or high humidity. Handset, battery, charger (sold separately), Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) and other optional accessories are not waterproof.
- Do not remove the battery while handset power is on to avoid malfunction.
- If the battery has been removed from handset or handset has not been charged for a long time, stored data and settings may be lost or altered. SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damage or loss resulting from such negligence.
- The battery is a consumable item employing lithium ions. Replace the battery with a new one if the operation time becomes extremely short after it is fully charged. Buy a new battery designated for handset.
- Do not dispose of batteries with municipal waste. Insulate the terminal with tape or place the battery in a plastic bag and take it to the nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center. Be sure to observe local regulations on battery disposal.

Li-ion 00

- Be sure to pull the tab (above ▲ mark on the battery) to remove the battery (page 14-5). Otherwise the terminals may be damaged.
- Some handset display pixels may be missing or remain lit. This is not a defect or malfunction. If Display is left on for a long period of time, pictures may be permanently burned into it.
- Make sure Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (sold separately) or Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately) is securely plugged into Earphone Microphone Jack. Failing to do so may generate noise on the other party's phone during calls.
- Do not turn the volume up too high while using Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately). Exposure to high sound levels may impair hearing and prolonged use may cause hearing damage regardless of the volume level. Sound leakage may annoy other people and surrounding sounds may not be heard clearly when walking, resulting in an accident.
- When Earphone Microphone Jack and External Device Port are not in use, make sure to replace the covers. Otherwise dust or water may enter handset causing malfunction.
- Hold the plug and do not pull the cord when unplugging Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (sold separately) or Stereo Earphone-Microphone (sold separately). Pulling the cord may cause damage or malfunction.

- Antenna of handset is built into the body. Signal sensitivity may be reduced by touching/covering Internal Antenna area (page 1-3).Do not cover this area by affixing stickers or any other items. Doing so may prevent you from making/receiving calls, sending/receiving messages or accessing the Web.
- TV Antenna is built in the upper section (Display side) of handset. Closing handset or covering this section with your hand may cause bad reception of TV signal, preventing you from watching TV.
- When you replace handset or send it for repair, messages and other data stored on handset cannot be transferred to another handset.
- Do not drop USIM Card or subject it to excessive shock. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not bend USIM Card or place a heavy object on it. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not allow USIM Card to get wet or leave it in places of high humidity. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not use or leave USIM Card in hot places such as near a fire or heater. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Avoid storing USIM Card in direct sunlight or hot and humid places. Failing to do so may cause a malfunction.
- Keep USIM Card out of infants' reach. Failing to do so may result in USIM Card being accidentally swallowed or cause an injury.
- Before using USIM Card, read the instruction manual of USIM Card thoroughly to ensure safe and proper operation.

Functional Limitations

- After handset upgrade or subscription cancellation, the following functions become unavailable on handset:
  - · Camera
  - · Digital TV
  - · Media Player
  - · S! Appli
- Above functions may become unavailable after long periods of not using handset. Contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-48).

Mobile Camera

- Be sure to observe proper etiquette when using the camera.
- Do not expose the camera lens to direct sunlight. Concentrated sunlight through the lens may cause handset to malfunction.
- Be sure to try taking and previewing pictures before using the camera on important occasions like wedding ceremonies.
- Do not commercially use or transfer pictures taken with the camera without the permission of the copyright holder (photographer), except for personal use.
- Do not use the camera in locations where taking photos and recording videos are prohibited.
- Do not block the lens with your fingers or strap when shooting pictures or videos.

Mobile Light and Twinkle Light

- Do not use Mobile Light or Twinkle Light in hot, cold or humid places. Doing so may shorten their life.
- Mobile Light and Twinkle Light have a limited life. Repeated use will decrease the light intensity.

Copyrights

- Copyrighted materials, such as music, images, computer programs and databases, and their respective holders are protected by copyright laws. Duplication of copyrighted materials is permitted only for individual or home use. Making copies (including data conversion), modifications, transfers or network distributions of copies for purposes other than stated above without proper authorization constitutes an infringement of copyrights and moral rights, potentially resulting in claims for reparations or criminal punishment. If you use handset to make copies, observe the copyright laws. Furthermore, recording materials using the camera is also subject to the same laws.

Right of Portrait

- Portrait right is the right of an individual to refuse to be photographed by others and protects from the unauthorized publication or use of an individual's photograph by others. Right of personality is a portrait right applicable to all citizens and right of publicity is a portrait right (property right) designed to protect celebrities' interests. Be careful when taking pictures with handset camera. Photographing, publicizing and distributing photographs of citizens and celebrities without permission are illegal.

FCC Notice

Handset may cause TV or radio interference if used in close proximity to receiving equipment. The FCC can require you to stop using handset if such interference cannot be eliminated.

Information to User

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits of a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation; if this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

1. Reorient/relocate the receiving aerial.
2. Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
3. Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
4. Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Caution: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

End User License Agreement

TOSHIBA CORPORATION

IMPORTANT NOTE: PLEASE READ BEFORE USING YOUR HANDSET

BY ATTEMPTING TO USE ANY SOFTWARE ON THE SUPPLIED HANDSET THIS CONSTITUTES YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF THESE EULA TERMS. IF YOU REJECT OR DO NOT AGREE WITH ALL THE TERMS OF THIS EULA, PLEASE DO NOT ATTEMPT TO ACCESS OR USE THE SUPPLIED SOFTWARE.

End User License Agreement

This End User License Agreement ("EULA") is a legal agreement between you (as the user) and TOSHIBA CORPORATION ("Toshiba") with regard to the copyrighted software as installed in a Toshiba 3G handset supplied to you (the "Handset").
Use or disposal of any software installed in the Handset and related documentations (the "Software") will constitute your acceptance of these terms, unless separate terms are provided by the Software supplier on the Handset, in which case certain additional or different terms may apply. If you do not agree with the terms of this EULA, do not use or dispose the Software.

1. License Grant. Toshiba grants to you a personal, non-transferable and non-exclusive right to use the Software as set out in this EULA. Modifying, adapting, translating, renting, copying, making available, transferring or assigning all or part of the Software, or any rights granted hereunder, to any other persons and removing any proprietary notices, labels or marks from the Software is strictly prohibited, except as expressly permitted in this EULA. Furthermore, you hereby agree not to create derivative works based on the Software.
2. Copyright. The Software is licensed, not sold. You acknowledge that no title to the intellectual property in the Software is or will be transferred to you. You further acknowledge that title and full ownership rights to the Software will remain the exclusive property of Toshiba, Toshiba's affiliates, and/or their suppliers, and you will not acquire any rights to the Software, except as expressly set out in this EULA. You may keep a back-up copy of the Software only so far as necessary for its lawful use. All copies of the Software must contain the same proprietary notices as contained in or on the Software and are subject to the terms of this EULA. All rights not expressly granted under this EULA are reserved to Toshiba, Toshiba's affiliates and/or their suppliers.
3. Reverse Engineering. You agree that you will not attempt, and if you are a business organization, you will use your best efforts to prevent your employees, servants and contractors from attempting to reverse engineer, decompile, modify, translate or disassemble the Software in whole or in part except to the extent that such actions cannot be excluded by mandatory applicable law and only if those actions are taken in accordance with such applicable law. Any failure to comply with the above or any other terms and conditions contained herein will result in the automatic termination of this license and the reversion of the rights granted hereunder to Toshiba.

4. **DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY.** The Software is provided "AS IS" without warranty of any kind. **TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES, AND THEIR SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS OR OTHER TERMS (WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED), INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS AND TERMS OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS; AND THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE IS WITH YOU. YOU ACCEPT THAT SOFTWARE MAY NOT MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS AND NO WARRANTY CAN BE GIVEN THAT OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE.**
5. **LIMITATION OF LIABILITY. TO THE FULLEST EXTENT LEGALLY PERMITTED, IN NO EVENT SHALL TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES OR THEIR SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY DAMAGES FOR (A) LOST BUSINESS OR REVENUE, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS DATA; OR (B) CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR INDIRECT DAMAGES OF ANY KIND (WHETHER UNDER CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) ARISING OUT OF: (I) THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES OR THEIR SUPPLIER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES; OR (II) ANY CLAIM BY A THIRD PARTY. SAVE AS SET OUT IN THIS SECTION, TOSHIBA'S ENTIRE LIABILITY UNDER THIS EULA SHALL NOT EXCEED THE PRICE PAID FOR THE SOFTWARE, IF ANY.**

PLEASE MAKE AND RETAIN A COPY OF ALL DATA YOU HAVE INSERTED INTO YOUR PRODUCT, FOR EXAMPLE NAMES, ADDRESSES, PHONE NUMBERS, PICTURES, RINGTONES ETC, BEFORE SUBMITTING YOUR PRODUCT FOR A WARRANTY SERVICE, AS SUCH DATA MAY BE DELETED OR ERASED AS PART OF THE REPAIR OR SERVICE PROCESS.

6. Laws. This EULA will be governed by the laws of Japan. All disputes arising out of this EULA shall be subject to the exclusive jurisdiction of the Tokyo District Court.
7. Export Laws. Any use, duplication or disposal of the Software involves products and/or technical data that may be controlled under the export laws of applicable countries or region and may be subject to the approval of the applicable governmental authorities prior to export. Any export, directly or indirectly, in contravention of the export laws of applicable countries or region is prohibited.
8. Third Party Beneficiary. You agree that certain suppliers of the Software to Toshiba have a right as a third party beneficiary to enforce the terms of this EULA against you as a user.

Declaration of Conformity

CE 0682

TOSHIBA
Leading Innovation >>>

TOSHIBA INFORMATION SYSTEMS (U.K.) LTD
Toshiba Court, Weybridge Business Park,
Addlestone Road, Weybridge, Surrey KT15 2UL.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

We, **Toshiba Information Systems UK (Ltd), Mobile Communications Division**

of **Toshiba Court**
Weybridge Business Park
Addlestone Road
Weybridge
KT15 2UL

declare under our sole responsibility that the product

830T
Type (Model) Name is CL4 – J01
UMTS & GSM/DCS/PCS Terminal (Tri band 900, 1800 & 1900)

to which this declaration relates, is in conformity with the following standards and/or Other normative documents.

3GPP TS 51.010-1, 3GPP TS 34.121, EN 60950, EN 301 489-1, EN 301 489-7, EN 301-489-24, EN 301 489-17, EN 300 328 and EN 50360

We hereby declare that all essential radio test suites, EMC & safety requirements have been carried out and that the above named product is in conformity to all the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC.

The conformity assessment procedure referred to in Article 10(5) and detailed in Annex IV of Directive 1999/5/EC has been followed with the involvement of the following Notified Body:

Cetecom GmbH, Im Teelbuch 116, 45219 Essen, Germany

Identification mark: **0682**

The technical documentation relevant to the above equipment will be held at:

Toshiba Information Systems UK (Ltd), Mobile Communications Division
Delta House, The Crescent, Southwood Business Park,
Farnborough, Hampshire, GU14 0NL

Name:- Hidehito Koka

Title:- Deputy Managing Director of TIU
General Manager Mobile Communications Division

Signature:- **Date:-** 23.09.2008

INVESTOR IN PEOPLE

FS14787

Trademarks and Patents

Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations :

4,901,307	5,504,773	5,109,390
5,535,239	5,267,262	5,600,754
5,416,797	5,778,338	5,490,165
5,101,501	5,511,073	5,267,261
5,568,483	5,414,796	5,659,569
5,056,109	5,506,865	5,228,054
5,544,196	5,337,338	5,657,420
5,710,784		

Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

microSD Logo is a trademark.

microSDHC Logo is a trademark.

Powered by Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™ Mascot Capsule® is a registered trademark of HI Corporation © 2002-2003 HI Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

The Bluetooth word mark and logo are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by TOSHIBA is under license.

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG-LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

Osaifu-Keitai is a registered trademark of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

Chaku-Uta®, Chaku-Uta Full® is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT AND/OR BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT, ERIC YOUNG OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

QR Code is a registered trademark of Denso wave Incorporated.

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. FeliCa is a trademark of Sony Corporation.

is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.

Edy is a brand name of the prepaid-type electronic money service managed by bitWallet, Inc.

Sky Mail, S! Mail, S! Appli, S! GPS Navi, S! Information Channel, S! Addressbook Back-up, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, PC Site Browser, Sha-mail, Movie Sha-mail, Navi appli, S! Quick News, S! Town, S! Loop, Graphic Mail, Feeling Mail, Secure Remote Lock and 3G HighSpeed are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

Macromedia, Flash, Macromedia Flash, and Macromedia Flash Lite are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

BookSurfing® is a registered trademark of CELSYS, Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY, Inc.

"SOFTBANK" SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.

This product contains NetFront Mobile Client Suite of ACCESS CO., LTD.
ACCESS, the ACCESS logo and NetFront are registered trademarks or trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in the United States, Japan and/or other countries.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

This product uses OKAO™ Vision of OMRON Corporation.
"OKAO" and "OKAO Vision" are registered trademarks of OMRON Corporation in Japan.

Yahoo! and the Yahoo!/Y! logos are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

All other company names and trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

This 830T mobile phone complies with the technical standards for the absorption of radio frequency (RF) energy as set by the Japanese government. These technical standards, based upon scientific evidence, were established to ensure that RF energy from wireless mobile devices used next to the head do not have a serious effect on human health. The maximum Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which measures the average radio wave energy absorbed by the human head, set by the Japanese government is 2 W/kg*. This allowed value includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and stature. The value corresponds with the international guidelines prescribed by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with the World Health Organization (WHO).

All models of mobile phones are required to comply with the technical standards of Japan set forth in the Radio Law before being released for sale. The 830T has received construction design certification under the Radio Law with a SAR value of 0.705 W/kg. This maximum SAR value was determined by TÜV Rheinland Japan, Ltd. (registered certification agency) and the Telecom Engineering Center (measurement agency) at the maximum transmission power of this handset with measurement carried out conforming to the guidelines set by the Japanese government. Depending on the product, there may be minute differences in the SAR. However, they are within the allowed limits. During calling, the actual SAR is lower as handset is designed to use the minimum transmission power necessary to communicate with the mobile network.

Additional information about SAR can be found at the website listed below.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications website:
http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/j/ele/index.htm
Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB) website:
http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html
SoftBank website:
http://www.softbankmobile.co.jp/ja/info/public/emf/emf02.html
Toshiba Mobile Phone website:
http://www.toshiba.co.jp/product/etsg/cmt/

* The technical guidelines are stipulated in the Ministerial Ordinance Related to the Radio Law (Wireless Equipment Regulations, Article 14-2).

About SoftBank's Body SAR Policy

* Body SAR: Refers to the SAR of the maximum transmission power when continuously talking with handset attached to the body and using an earphone.

** Specific Absorption Rate (SAR): Measured value of continuous talking at 6 minute intervals.
Our technical standards for body SAR include the U.S. Federal Communications Commission (FCC) standards and information from Europe. For more information see the sections on "FCC RF Exposure Information" and "European RF Exposure Information."

*** Placement on the body: Measurements were taken with the rear of handset facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm as the normal position of handset. In order to maintain compliance with radio frequency (RF) exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the body and the back of handset. Choose accessories, such as belt clips and holsters, that do not contain metallic components.

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

The tests are performed in positions and locations (e.g., at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model handset when tested for use at the ear is 0.505 W/kg and when worn on the body, as described in this user guide, is 0.446 W/kg.

Body-worn Operation: This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of handset. The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid after searching on SP2-CL4-J01.

Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website at http://www.phonefacts.net.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when tested at the ear was 1.06 W/kg*. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide**. In this case, the highest tested SAR value is 0.674 W/kg.

As SAR is measured utilizing the devices highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the network.

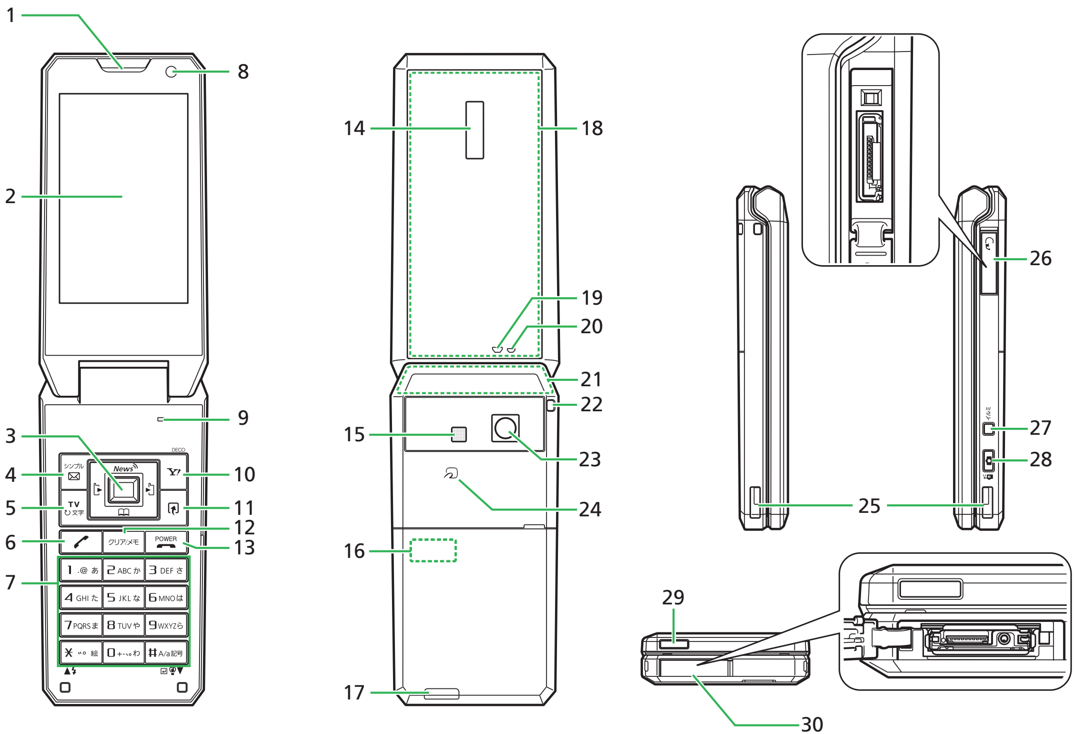
The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a 'hands-free' device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body. Additional Information can be found on the websites of the World Health Organization (http://www.who.int/emf).

* The tests are carried out in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

** Please see the <FCC RF Exposure Information> section about body worn operation.

1 Getting Started

Handset Parts & Functions

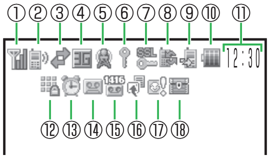


1 **Earpiece**
2 **Display**
3 **Multi Selector** : Move cursor.
Center Key : Open Main Menu/confirm operations.
4 **Mail Key (Left Softkey)** : Open Messaging Menu.
(Press and hold): Switch to Simple Mode.
5 **TV Key** : Activate TV.
6 **Send Key** : Make/answer voice calls.
7 **Keypad**: Enter numbers/characters.
: Turn on Mobile Light (when using camera).
(Press and hold): Show My Status.
(Press and hold): Set/cancel Manner Mode.
8 **Sub Camera**
9 **Microphone**
10 **Yahoo! Keitai Key (Right Softkey)** : Access Yahoo! Keitai.
(Press and hold): Scan special QR codes for Keitaideco.
11 **Shortcut Key** : Open Shortcut Menu.
12 **Clear/Memo Key** : Delete characters/cancel operations.
(Press and hold): Set/cancel Answering Machine.
13 **End/Power Key** : End calls/operations.
(Press and hold): Power handset on/off.
14 **External Display**
15 **Mobile Light/Penlight**
16 **Memory Card Slot**: Remove the battery before inserting/removing a memory card (page 2-25).
17 **Speaker**
18 **Twinkle Light**: Flashes for incoming calls, messages, etc.
19 **External Light**
20 **Charging Indicator**: Lights during charging and goes out when charging is complete.
21 **Internal Antenna**
22 **Handstrap Hole**
23 **Main Camera**
24 **Logo**
25 **Charger Terminals**
26 **Earphone Microphone Jack**
27 **Side Key** : Toggle External Display views.*
* Available when handset is closed.
(Press and hold): Twinkle Light flashes.
28 **Camera Key** : Activate the camera/shutter, or toggle External Display views.*
* Available when handset is closed.
(Press and hold in Standby): Activate the video camera.
(Press and hold with handset closed): Set/cancel Manner Mode, send a Simple Notice, turn on Penlight, or check the balance of e-money for Lifestyle-Appli (any one of these functions can be set (page 2-4)).
29 **Infrared Port**
30 **External Device Port**

- Signal sensitivity may be reduced by touching/covering Internal Antenna area. Do not cover this area by affixing stickers or any other items.

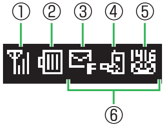
Display Indicators

Display



① Signal Strength
  Strong Moderate Weak Faint
  Out of Range
  Offline Mode On
② / Voice/Video Call
  Dial-up Connection
  Positioning
  IC Card Lock Active
③ Packet Transmission
  My Status Online
  Packet Transmission Ready
  Packet Network Range
④ Non-SoftBank Network Area
  / 3G Network Area/Roaming
  / GSM Network Area/Roaming
  / GPRS Network Area/Roaming
⑤ S! Information Channel Updated
  Reception of Rights Object
  Indicates the reception of a content key during operation.
  Message Box Full
  Message Delivery Failed
  New Messages
  Delivery Report
  New S! Mail/SMS and Delivery Report
⑥ Password Lock Active (appears during TV Timer viewing.)
  PC Site Connected
  S! Quick News Updated
  Memory Card Inserted
⑦ Web SSL
  Indicates a connection to a web page with security protection.
  / Bluetooth® Connection Established/ Connection Standby
  Bluetooth® Connection Established (SCMS-T Device Supported)
  Some Bluetooth® Connections Lost
  Bluetooth® Connection(s) Lost
  Infrared Communication
  USB Connection
  Card Reader Mode
⑧ Software Update
  External Connection for Data Synchronization
  / S! Appli Activated/Paused
  Playing Music Files
  Music File Playback Paused
  Playing Video Files
  Streaming
  TV Timer Set
⑨ Missed Call(s)
  Manner Mode (Silent)
  Manner Mode (Alarms)
  Manner Mode (Drive)
  / / Manner Mode (Original 1 to 3)
⑩ Battery Level
  Sufficiently Charged
  Low
  Very Low
  Charge Immediately
  Charging
⑪ Clock
⑫ Keypad Lock Active
  Password Lock Active
⑬ Alarm Set
⑭ Answering Machine On (No Messages)
  / / / / Answering Machine On (Message(s) Recorded)
  / / / / Answering Machine Off (Message(s) Recorded)
⑮ Voice Mail Message(s)
  Call Forwarding (Ringer Off for Voice Call)
  Call Forwarding (Ringer Off for Video Call)
  Call Forwarding (Ringer Off for Voice and Video Calls)
⑯ Open Information Prompt
⑰ S! Friend's Status Notification (Invitation)
⑱ Show Secret

External Display



① Signal Strength
  Strong Moderate Weak Faint
 Out of Range
 Offline Mode On

② Battery Level
  Sufficiently Charged
  Low
  Very Low
  Charge Immediately
 Charging

③ Message Box Full
 Message Delivery Failed
 New Messages
 Delivery Report
 New S! Mail/SMS and Delivery Report
 Keypad Lock Active
 Password Lock Active
 IC Card Lock Active
 Cannot Activate External Playback Window
 / Bluetooth® Connection Established/ Connection Standby
 Bluetooth® Connection Established (SCMS-T Device Supported)
 Some Bluetooth® Connections Lost
 Bluetooth® Connection(s) Lost

④ Missed Call(s)
 Manner Mode (Silent)
 Manner Mode (Alarms)
 Manner Mode (Drive)
 / / Manner Mode (Original 1 to 3)

⑤ Voice Mail Message(s)
 Answering Machine On (No Messages)
 / / / / Answering Machine On (Message(s) Recorded)
 / / / / Answering Machine Off (Message(s) Recorded)

⑥ Clock

Toggle External Display views by pressing ☐ｲﾙﾐ or [camera key] while handset is closed.

- See page 2-8 for setting External Display.



Icon & Clock Display



Clock Display



Icon Display



External Playback Window

Information Prompt

Information Prompt appears to inform you of missed calls, new messages and other information.

1 Information Prompt appears



2 Select an item➡■

Information Prompt Items

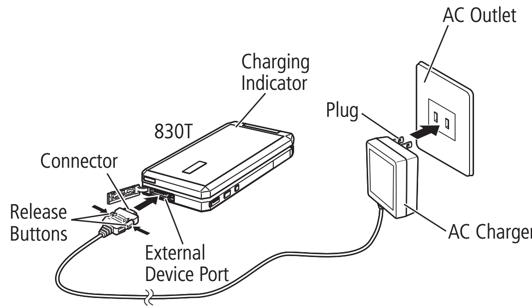
- **Missed Calls**: Missed call(s)
- **Missed Calls**: New Voice Mail message(s) at Voice Mail Center
- **Ans Machine**: New message(s) recorded
- **New Messages**: Unread S! Mail/SMS
- **Unsent Messages**: Unsent S! Mail/SMS
- **Partly Sent**: Unsent S! Mail for some recipients
- **Delivered**: Unread delivery report(s)
- **Missed CT**: Missed S! Circle Talk call(s)
- **Notification**: New S! Friend's Status notification(s)
- **Info Channel**: Content update(s) available
- **Info Channel**: S! Information Channel update failed
- **Weather Updated**: Weather report update available
- **Update Failed**: S! Quick News update failed
- **Stop Snooze**: Cancel snooze
- **Timer Results**: TV view timer results
- **Resume S! Appli**: S! Appli paused
- **IC Card Request**: Request from Reader/Writer
- **Software Update**: Software updated
- **Content Key Memory Full**: Content key cannot be saved any more

Charging Battery

- Charging at low temperatures may be ineffective. Charge battery between 5 to 35°C.
- Battery must be installed in handset before charging. Use only specified AC Charger (sold separately), Desktop Cradle (sold separately) and In-Car Charger (sold separately).
- Regularly clean Charger Terminals, battery terminal and External Device Port with a dry cotton swab to avoid contact failure.
- If ***Please check connection with your charger.*** appears on Display, clean Charger Terminals, battery terminal and External Device Port with a dry cotton swab and try again.
  When the message still does not disappear, stop charging immediately, and take the battery to your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-48).
- Do not charge the battery in humid places.
- Charging is possible while handset is turned on, but takes longer than while handset is turned off.
- When charging while handset is turned on, appears on Display and turns to when charging is complete.
- Handset and AC Charger may warm during charging. However, if it overheats, stop using immediately. There may be some defect.
- If a call arrives during charging, ringtone sounds/handset vibrates and External Light and Twinkle Light flash.

Using AC Charger

Use only specified AC Charger (sold separately).



1 Connect AC Charger connector to handset

- Inscription on connector should face up.

2 Insert the plug into an AC outlet

Charging Indicator illuminates red while charging; may take up to approximately 120 minutes.

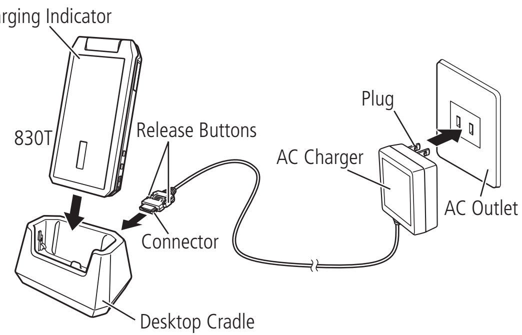
3 Unplug AC Charger, then disconnect handset

- Press and hold Release Buttons to remove AC Charger connector from handset.

- AC Charger and Desktop Cradle support a power supply of 100 to 240 V AC.
- AC Charger is exclusively for use in Japan.
- SoftBank is not liable for any problems associated with charging overseas.

Using Desktop Cradle

Use only specified AC Charger (sold separately) and Desktop Cradle (sold separately).



1 Attach AC Charger connector to Desktop Cradle

- Inscription on connector should face up.

2 Insert the plug into an AC outlet

3 Slide handset into Desktop Cradle until it clicks

Charging Indicator illuminates red while charging;
may take up to approximately 120 minutes.

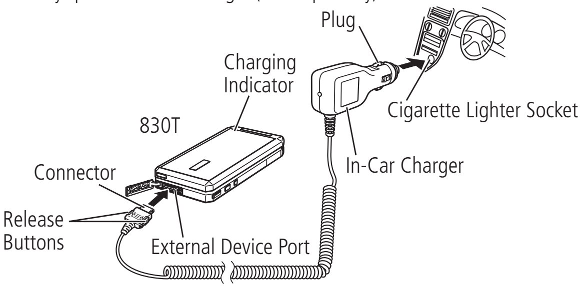
4 Remove handset from Desktop Cradle, then unplug AC Charger

5 Disconnect AC Charger from Desktop Cradle

- Press and hold Release Buttons to remove the connector.

Using In-Car Charger

Use only specified In-Car Charger (sold separately).



1 **Connect Charger connector to handset**

- Inscription on connector should face up.

2 **Insert Charger into cigarette lighter socket**

Charging Indicator illuminates red while charging; may take up to approximately 120 minutes.

3 **Unplug In-Car Charger, then disconnect handset**

- Press and hold Release Buttons to remove Charger connector from handset.

- Do not use In-Car Charger when the car engine is off. Doing so may drain the car battery.
- Unplug In-Car Charger when leaving your car. If Charging Indicator remains on after removing car key, In-Car Charger may drain car battery.
- Use of handset while driving is prohibited by law. Before using handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking is permitted.

More Features

Charging In Progress Image (Slideshow)

(► page 13-7)

Outer Panel and Inner Sheets

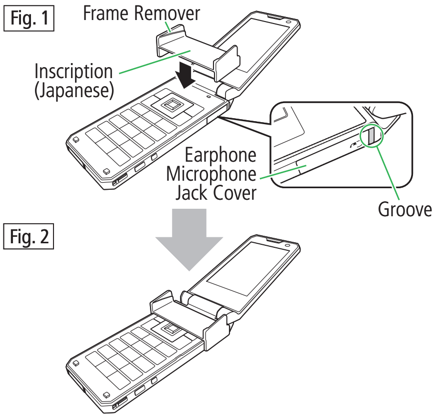
Change handset appearance by replacing Outer Panel and Inner Sheet. Each Inner Sheet comes with a special QR Code (page 2-32). Scan QR Code to download theme-matching user interface, ringtones, etc.

Changing Outer Panel/Inner Sheet

Removal

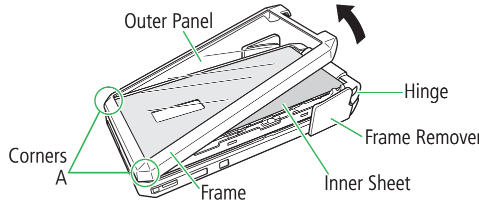
1 Attach Frame Remover

- Fasten Frame Remover, making sure notch fits completely into handset groove (see Fig. 1). Note that inscription on Frame Remover should face up.



2 Close handset, and remove Frame and Outer Panel

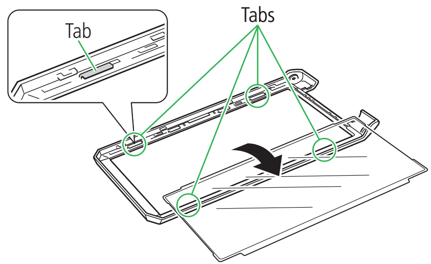
- Press corners (A) to tilt Frame up.



- Remove Frame, Outer Panel then Frame Remover.

3 Remove Outer Panel from Frame

- Be careful not to damage the tabs of Frame or Outer Panel.

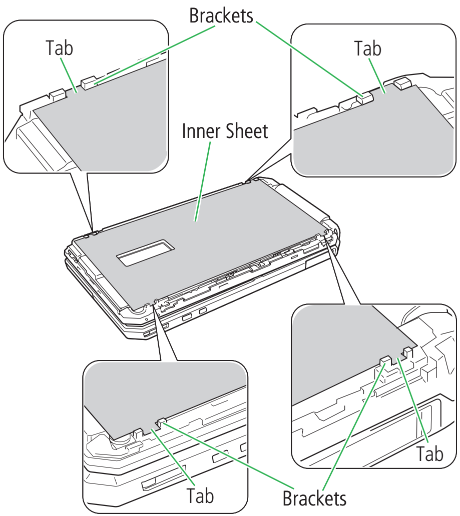


- After removing Outer Panel from Frame, remove Inner Sheet(s).

Attachment

1 Place Inner Sheet(s) on handset

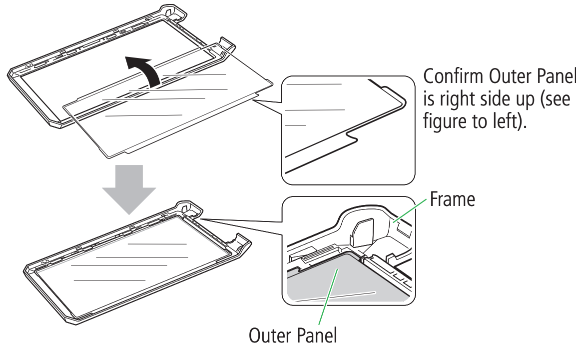
- Insert Inner Sheet tabs into handset brackets (see below).



- Layer up to two Inner Sheets together.

2 Attach Outer Panel to Frame

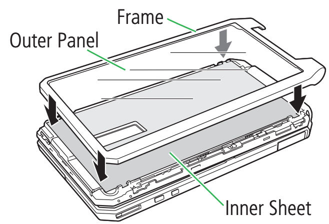
- Secure Outer Panel into Frame with a click.



- Make sure Outer Panel is not inside out or upside down. Otherwise, parts may be damaged.

3 Replace Frame

- Press down until Frame is securely fixed to handset.



Turning Handset Power On

1 Press and hold POWER



Standby

When Handset Powers On for the First Time

Following appears the first time handset is powered on or after performing ***Reset All*** or ***Reset Setting***.

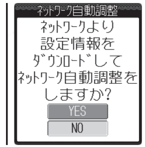


- Set Date & Time (page 1-13).

Retrieving Network Information

Before using network-related services (Yahoo! Keitai, Messaging or S! Appli), retrieve network connection information.
The first time you press ■, ✉ or Y!, a prompt appears.

1 Press ■/✉/Y!



2 Select *YES*➡■

Handset connects to the network and Network Information is retrieved.

- If Network Information is not acquired, some features will be limited.
- After replacing USIM Card, retrieve network information again.
- To retrieve network information from Main Menu:
  Press ■➡***Settings***➡■➡***Connectivity***➡■➡***Retrieve NW Info***➡■➡***YES***➡■

Turning Handset Power Off

1 Press and hold POWER

Power-off screen appears and handset powers off.

Setting Date and Time

- The date and time are set for Main City set in the World Clock settings.

1 **Press** ■ ➡ ***Settings*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Phone Settings*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Clock*** ➡ ■



Clock Menu

2 **Select** ***Date&Time*** ➡ ■



3 **Enter the year, month, day and time** ➡ ■

- Enter a time in the 24-hour system.
- Use ◂▸ to move cursor and ▴▾ to select a number.
- Day of the week is automatically set.

Clock Format (12-hour/24-hour)

1 **From Clock Menu (left), select** ***12hour/24hour*** ➡ ■



2 **Select** ***12 hour*** **or** ***24 hour*** ➡ ■

Manner Mode and Offline Mode

Be careful about disturbing others in public or quiet areas.

- Turn handset off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- In airplanes, turn off handset to avoid interference with flight equipment.
- In hospitals, research institutes and other places where handset use is prohibited, turn handset power off to avoid interference with precision apparatus.
- When using handset in quiet places such as restaurants and hotel lobbies, be mindful not to disturb others.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Using Manner Mode

- See the table below for Manner Mode types and descriptions.

Type	Description
Silent	No sounds are emitted from the speaker.
Alarms	Only alarm sounds.
Drive	Handset tones and sounds are emitted only when earphones are connected. Handset does not vibrate. All incoming calls are answered by Answering Machine.
Original 1 to 3	Customize following items: · Ringtone (Ringtone Volume & Vibration) · Alarm (Alarm Volume & Vibration) · Calendar (Alarm Volume & Vibration) · S! Appli (S! Appli Volume) · Sound Volume · Effect Sound On/Off · Battery Alarm On/Off · Answering Machine On/Off

1 Press and hold #A/a記号



- To cancel Manner Mode, press and hold #A/a記号.

- Shutter click and recording start/end tone sound even in Manner Mode.
- S! Circle Talk connects automatically if My Status is set to ***Auto Join***. Other party's voice will sound from speaker when connected, if handset is closed, even in Manner Mode.

Using Offline Mode

Use Offline Mode to temporarily suspend all handset transmissions. In Offline Mode, incoming/outgoing calls and network services (e.g. S! Mail/SMS transmission) are blocked.

1 **Press ■ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ ■**

2 **Select *Offline Mode* ➡ ■ (twice) ➡ *ON* ➡ ■**



- To cancel Offline Mode, select ***OFF***.

- The following are unavailable in Offline Mode.
  - · Emergency calls: 110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard)
  - · Bluetooth® and infrared communications

More Features

Manner Mode

(▶ page 13-11)

- Switch Manner Modes
- Customize Original Mode

About Codes

Handset Code, Center Access Code, Call Barring Service Code and Internet Security Code are required for some functions and settings.

- Write down those codes. If they are lost, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-48).
- Do not reveal your codes. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages.

Handset Code

Four-digit number required to use various handset functions. Handset Code can be changed (page 11-2). ***Reset All*** resets Handset Code to default.

- The default setting is "9999".

Center Access Code

Four-digit number assigned at initial subscription. It is required to perform Optional Service operations via landlines or to subscribe to fee-based content on the Internet.

Call Barring Service Code

Four-digit number assigned at initial subscription. It is required to set Call Barring. The code can be changed (page 3-18).
If the code is incorrectly entered three times, Call Barring settings lock. If this happens, Call Barring Service Code and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-48).

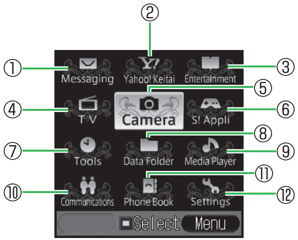
Internet Security Code

Internet Security Code is required to set Internet security. The code can be changed (page 11-5).

2 Basic Operations

Accessing Handset Functions

Press ■ in Standby to open Main Menu.
Use ✣ to select a menu icon and press ■ to access that menu.



Main Menu

①**Messaging**
Create S! Mail/SMS messages. Also check received and sent S! Mail/SMS messages (Chapter 4).

②**Yahoo! Keitai**
From Yahoo! Keitai menu, access the Mobile Internet to download pictures, melodies and applications. Use PC Site Browser to access websites for PCs (Chapter 5).

③**Entertainment**
Access latest news, launch BookSurfing® and visit Ku-man's Room (Chapter 9).

④**TV**
Watch Digital TV (Chapter 6).

⑤**Camera**
Take pictures and record videos (Chapter 7).

⑥**S! Appli**
Access applications such as games (Chapter 8).

⑦**Tools**
Access useful functions such as Alarms and Calculator (Chapters 9, 13, 14).

⑧**Data Folder**
Save/access files here (Chapter 2).

⑨**Media Player**
Play music and video files (Chapter 8).

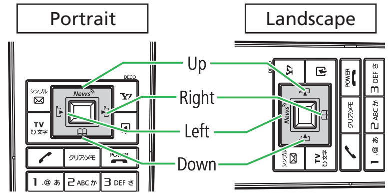
⑩**Communications**
Access Communication Services provided by SoftBank (S! Town, S! Loop, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk) (Chapter 10).

⑪**Phone Book**
Save and access Phone Book information (Chapter 2).

⑫**Settings**
Modify and confirm handset settings, and perform data communication and backup (Chapters 12, 13).

Operations in Landscape View

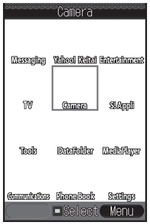
Use Multi Selector in Landscape View as follows.



Customizing Main Menu

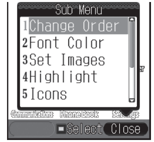
Customize Main Menu design (icons, font color, focus frame color, etc.).

1 **Press** [■] ➡ [Y!] ➡ ***Set Images*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***Options*** ➡ [■]



- ***Original*** - Default theme.
- ***Phone Memory*** - Select a Main Menu file.
- ***Keitaideco*** - Sets the downloaded Keitaideco as Main Menu. Keitaideco must be set in advance from Data Folder (page 2-32). Then, Select ***Keitaideco*** ➡ [■]

2 **Select an item** ➡ [Y!]

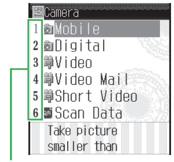


3 **Select *Icons*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***Pictures*** ➡ [■] ➡ **Select an image** ➡ [■]

- To change the icon order:
  Press [Y!] ➡ ***Change Order*** ➡ [■] ➡ Select an item ➡ [■] ➡ Select a position ➡ [■]
- To change the font color:
  Press [Y!] ➡ ***Font Color*** ➡ [■] ➡ Select a color ➡ [■]
- To change the wallpaper:
  Press [Y!] ➡ ***Wallpaper*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***Phone Memory*** or ***Memory Card*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***Pictures*** or ***Digital Camera*** ➡ [■] ➡ Select an image ➡ [■]
- To change the focus frame color:
  Press [Y!] ➡ ***Highlight*** ➡ [■] ➡ Select a color ➡ [■]

Numbered Menu Items

Enter the menu item number or folder number 1 to 12 on handset keypad ([0] to [9], [*], [#]) for direct menu/folder access.

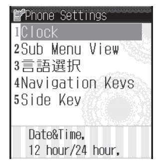


Numbers correspond to keypad keys.

Changing Multi Selector Shortcuts

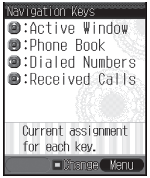
By default, a shortcut is assigned to each Multi Selector key. Switch the assigned shortcuts.

1 **Press** [■] ➡ ***Settings*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***Phone Settings*** ➡ [■]



Phone Settings Window

2 **Select *Navigation Keys*➡■**



3 **Press ■➡Select the function you want to assign to ➡■➡Select the function you want to assign to ➡■➡Select the function you want to assign to ➡■**

- The remaining function is assigned automatically to .

Setting Side Key Function

Set a function to Side Key. Select from Manner Mode, Simple Notice, Torch (Penlight) and Balance. To access the set function, press and hold while handset is closed in Standby.

1 **From Phone Settings Window, select *Side Key*➡■➡Select a function➡■**

Sub Menu View

Sub Menu View appears at top of sub menus (press (Menu) for sub menu access). When multiple sub menu items are available, the two most recently selected items appear in Sub Menu View.

1 **From Phone Settings Window, select *Sub Menu View*➡■**

2 **Select *Show* or *Hide*➡■**

- This setting is disabled for S! Circle Talk, S! Circle Talk Call Log and S! Friend's Status.

Adding Functions to Shortcuts Menu

Add frequently used functions to Shortcuts Menu for quick and easy access.

1 **Open a function (e.g. open S! Appli Library)➡**



2 **Press (Assign)**

- ***Assign*** does not appear when the function is unavailable for Shortcuts Menu.

Using Shortcuts Menu

1 **Press ➡Select a function➡■**

- Activate up to two functions from Shortcuts Menu.

More Features

Menus

(► page 2-26)

Mini Tool Settings

(► page 13-3)

- Configure Mini Tool Settings
- Set Wide View
- Set Slideshow for Mini Tool

Using Only Basic Functions

Use Simple Mode to limit menu items. Select from the following menu patterns.

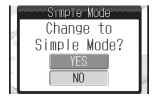
Pattern \ View	List View	Icon View
Menu 1	Phone Book Search Message Box Create Message Manner Mode My Number Add to Phone Book Tools Settings Full Menu	Message Box / Create Message / Manner Mode Add to Phone Book / Phone Book Search / Tools Settings / My Number / Full Menu
Menu 2	Phone Book Messaging Camera Data Folder My Number Alarms Tools Settings Full Menu	Alarms / Camera / Data Folder Messaging / Phone Book / Tools Settings / My Number / Full Menu
Menu 3	Phone Book Messaging Yahoo! Keitai Camera My Number Data Folder Tools Settings Full Menu	Yahoo! Keitai / Camera / Data Folder Messaging / Phone Book / Tools Settings / My Number / Full Menu

- The following items are automatically set in Simple Mode.
  - · ***Sub Menu View***: ***Hide***
  - · Standby clock (page 2-8): Switches to ***1-Line Digit*** if ***Mini Clock*** has been set in normal mode.
  - · ***IdleScreen*** under ***Wide View***: ***ON***
  - · Active Window: Switches to ***ON (Manual)*** if ***ON (Always)*** has been set in normal mode.
  - · ***Mini Tool***: ***Giant Date***

  The above settings are retained after canceling Simple Mode.

Switching to Simple Mode

1 **Press and hold** [key]



2 **Select *YES*➡[■]➡Select a font size➡[■]➡Select a menu pattern➡[■]**

- To switch to Simple Mode from Main Menu: Press [■]➡***Settings***➡[■]➡***SimpleMode ON***➡[■]

Opening Main Menu

1 In Simple Mode, press ■



Main Menu

- Press (Switch) to toggle between List View and Icon View.

Canceling Simple Mode

1 In Simple Mode, press and hold → *YES* → ■

- To cancel Simple Mode from Main Menu: Press ■ → ***Settings*** → ■ → ***SimpleMode OFF*** → ■ → ***YES*** → ■
- The font size setting is retained after canceling Simple Mode.

More Features

Simple Mode

(page 2-26)

Display

Wallpaper

1 **Press ■ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Display* ➡ ■**



Display Setting Window

2 **Select *Idle Screen* ➡ ■ ➡ *Main Display* ➡ ■ ➡ *Wallpaper* ➡ ■ ➡ *Picture* ➡ ■**



3 **Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a folder ➡ ■ ➡ Select an image ➡ ■**

4 **Use ✥ to compose the image**

- To adjust the width or height:
  Press (Resize) ➡ ***Fit to Width*** or ***Fit to Length*** ➡ ■
- To rotate the image:
  Press (Resize) ➡ ***Rotate Image*** ➡ ■

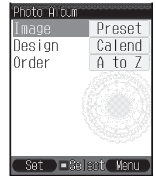
5 **Press (Cut) ➡ ■**

- To set the default image:
  In **3**, select ***Preset*** ➡ ■ (twice)
- To set Keitaideco:
  In **3**, select ***Keitaideco**** ➡ ■ (twice)
  * Keitaideco must be set in advance (page 2-32).

Photo Album (Slideshow)

Set up to five images to appear on Standby as slideshow. Set effect and image order.

1 **From Display Setting Window, select *Idle Screen* ➡ ■ ➡ *Main Display* ➡ ■ ➡ *Wallpaper* ➡ ■ ➡ *Photo Album* ➡ ■**



2 **Select *Image* ➡ ■ ➡ *Images List* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an image list ➡ ■**

- Save images to an image list first:
  Select an image list ➡ (Edit) ➡ Select an item ➡ ■ ➡ ***Phone Memory*** or ***Memory Card*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Pictures*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select an image ➡ ■ (twice) ➡ (Set)

3 **Select *Design* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an effect ➡ ■ (twice)**

4 **Select *Order* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an image order ➡ ■**

5 **Press (Set)**

- To set images in a folder:
  In **2**, select ***Select Folder*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select a folder ➡ ■
- To set preinstalled images:
  In **2**, select ***Preset*** ➡ ■

Clock

1 From Display Setting Window, select *Idle Screen* ➡ ■ ➡ *Main Display* ➡ ■ ➡ *Others* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a clock type ➡ ■ (twice)

- When you select ***1-line Digit***, ***2-line Digit***, ***World-Digital***, or ***World-Analog***, do the following.
  Use (navigation key) to adjust the position ➡ ■ (twice)

External Display

Set Indicators on or off for External Display.

1 From Display Setting Window, select *Idle Screen* ➡ ■ ➡ *Ext. Display* ➡ ■ ➡ *Icon+Clock* or *Clock Only* ➡ ■

Active Window (Japanese)

Save contact information to Members List and make calls, send messages and initiate S! Circle Talk from Active Window. In addition, check the latest information from S! Quick News and Weather Indicator.

Operating Active Window

1 Press (key)

The cursor appears indicating Active Window is enabled.

①


②

Shortcut Mode



③

Communication Mode

- Press (key) (Switch) to toggle between Shortcut and Communication Modes.

①**S! Quick News**
Shows newly received information.
②**Weather Indicator**
③**Members List**
Your current status (My Status) is shown on the top. Set an icon or a photo for each member. Save members from S! Friend's Status Members List to view their statuses. Make calls, send messages or initiate S! Circle Talk in Communication Mode.

Saving People to Members List

Add members to Members List from S! Friend's Status Members List or Phone Book. View members' statuses from Active Window.

1 From Active Window (Communication Mode), select an empty item➡ ■ (Save)

- To change members:
  Select an entry➡ Y! ➡ ***Change Member*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***YES*** ➡ ■

2 Select *Friend Status* or *Phone Book*➡ ■ ➡Select an entry➡ ■

Contacting Members

1 From Active Window (Communication Mode), use [up/down] to select a member

2 Use [left/right] to select a contact method ➡ ■

- Make a call
- Create and send a message
- Make an S! Circle Talk call

Checking S! Quick News Updates

- You must register contents of S! Quick News in advance (page 9-22).

1 From Active Window (Shortcut Mode), use [up/down] to select S! Quick News➡ ■

- Press [mail] (Update) to update information. Press Y! (Access) to access selected site.

- If update fails, Information Prompt appears. In News List Window, press Y! then select ***Update*** to initiate update.

Checking Weather Forecast

- For details on using Weather Indicator, see page 9-23.

1 From Active Window (Shortcut Mode), use [up/down] to select Weather Indicator ➡ ■

More Features

Active Window
(▶ page 2-27)

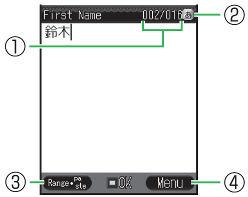
Active Window Settings
(▶ page 13-8)

- Show All Information or Only Unread One
- Set Ticker Speed
- Show/Hide Images
- Restore Settings and Registered Contents of S! Quick News to Default

About Text Entry

There are two kinds of input methods: Standard mode and Beeper mode. Unless otherwise noted, text entry operations are described using Standard mode. For details on entering text in Beeper mode, see page 14-10.

About Text Entry Window

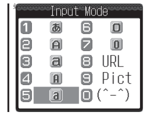


①Number of characters entered/Maximum number of characters allowed. The maximum number of characters allowed varies depending on the function.
②Current input mode.
③Select a text range and press [■] to copy the text, save it to Word List, etc.
④Press [Y!] to edit text, create Graphic Mail, etc.

Switching Text Input Modes

1 In a text entry window, press [TV]

- Unavailable input modes do not appear.



2 Select a text input mode➡[■]

Text Input Mode Icons

- [あ] Kanji (hiragana)
- [ア] Single-bye katakana
- [A] Double-byte alphanumerics (upper case)
- [a] Double-byte alphanumerics (lower case)
- [A] Single-byte alphanumerics (upper case)
- [a] Single-byte alphanumerics (lower case)
- [0] Double-byte numbers
- [0] Single-byte numbers

URL: Mail and URL extensions
Pict: Pictographs
(＾―＾) : Emoticons
My Pict: Pictographs in My Pictograms folder

Entering Characters

- For text entry key assignments, see page 14-9.

Example: Entering 須々木

1 In a text entry window, enter すずき

- Press [3 DEF さ] (three times)➡[□▪]➡[3 DEF さ] (three times)➡[✱ ゛゜ 絵]➡[2 ABC か] (twice)



2 Press [◻]



- To exit the suggestion list and enter characters after すずき, press [クリア/メモ].

3 **Use [◎] to select 須々木➡[■]**

須々木 is determined.

- To end text entry, press [■] after determining entered text.

Lower Case (a, っ, etc.)

Except in Numeric input mode, you can change the case of a character selected by the cursor (unconverted character) (compatible characters only).

Example: Changing あ to ぁ

1 **In a text entry window, press [1 .@あ]**

2 **Press [#A/a記号]➡[■]**

ぁ is determined.

Adding ゛ or ゜

In Kanji (hiragana) input mode and Single-byte katakana input mode, add ゛ to か (Ka), さ (Sa), た (Ta) and は (Ha) row characters. Add ゜ to は (Ha) row characters.

Example: Entering が

1 **In a text entry window, press [2ABCか]**

2 **Press [*゛゜絵]➡[■]**

が is determined.

- Press [*゛゜絵] to switch between ゛ and ゜ for は (Ha) row characters.

Hiragana to Alphanumerics/Katakana Conversion

Enter alphanumerics and katakana in Kanji (hiragana) input mode.

Example: Entering TOM (single-byte)

1 **In a text entry window, press the keys corresponding to the characters**

- Press [8TUVや] (once)➡[6MNOは] (three times)➡[□▪]➡[6MNOは] (once)

やふは is entered.

2 **Press [シンプル] (Kana)**

A suggestion list of roman characters and katakana appears.

- Press [シンプル] (Kana)/[Y!] (Num.) to switch between roman character/katakana conversion and number conversion.

3 **Use [◎] to select TOM (single-byte)➡[■]**

TOM (single-byte) is determined.

Toggling Characters in Reverse Order

Except in Numeric input mode, press [TV 文字] to toggle unconverted characters on the cursor in the reverse order.

Example: Toggling the characters assigned to [2ABCか]

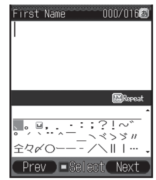
Press [2ABCか] ➡ Press [TV 文字]

→か→き→く→け→こ→ ⇒ →か→こ→け→く→き→

Symbols

1 **In a text entry window, press [#A/a記号]**

The double-byte symbol list opens.



2 **Select a symbol➡[■]**

The selected symbol is entered and the symbol list closes.

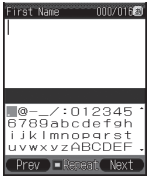
- To enter symbols continuously, press [TV 文字] after selecting each symbol.

Alphanumerics

1 In a text entry window, press [#A/a記号] (twice)

The double-byte alphanumeric list opens.

- The number of times [#A/a記号] is pressed differs depending on the function.



2 Select a number or letter➡[■]

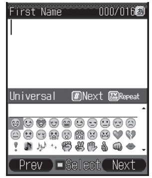
- Repeat this step to enter other numbers or letters.

Pictographs

1 In a text entry window, press [✱ ゛゜ 絵]

The pictograph list opens.

- You may be unable to enter pictographs depending on the function.



2 Select a pictograph➡[■]

The selected pictograph is entered and the pictograph list closes.

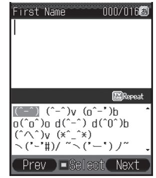
- To enter pictographs continuously, press [TV] after selecting each pictograph.

Emoticons

1 In a text entry window, press [✱ ゛゜ 絵] (twice)

The emoticon list opens.

- The number of times [✱ ゛゜ 絵] is pressed differs depending on the function.



2 Select an emoticon➡[■]

The selected emoticon is entered and the emoticon list closes.

- To enter emoticons continuously, press [TV] after selecting each emoticon.

E-mail Address and URL Extensions

Example: Entering ***.co.jp*** (part of an e-mail address)

1 In a text entry window, press [#A/a記号] (three times)

The address library opens.

- The number of times [#A/a記号] is pressed differs depending on the function.



2 Use [✣] to select *.co.jp* ➡ [■]

Editing Text

Correcting Entered Text

1 In a text entry window, move cursor to the left of the character to delete ➡ [クリア/メモ]

The character is deleted.

- To delete all characters to the right of the cursor, press and hold [クリア/メモ].
- When the cursor is at the end of text, press and hold [クリア/メモ] to delete the entire text.

2 Enter correct characters

Deleting Multiple Characters

1 In a text entry window, move cursor to the first character of the text range to delete ➡ [✉] (Range･paste)



2 Select *Start* ➡ [■] ➡ Move cursor to the last character ➡ [■]

3 Select *Delete* ➡ [■]

Copy/Cut/Paste

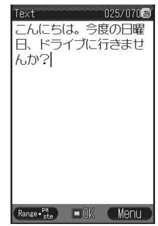
1 In a text entry window, move cursor to the first character of the text range to copy/cut ➡ [✉] (Range･paste)

2 Select *Start* ➡ [■] ➡ Move cursor to the last character ➡ [■]

3 Select *Cut* or *Copy* ➡ [■]

The selected range of text is stored on the clipboard.

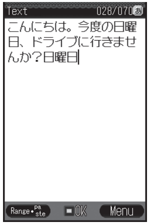
4 Position the cursor



5 Press [✉] (Range･paste) ➡ *Paste* ➡ [■]



6 **Select the text to paste➡■**



Undoing Last Operation

1 **In a text entry window, press Y!➡*Undo*➡■**



- Once text is reconverted or replaced, undo is unavailable.

More Features

Text Entry

(▶ page 2-27)

Text Entry Functions

(▶ page 2-28)

Text Entry Settings

(▶ page 13-34)

- Change Input Method
- Do Not Show Word Suggestions from Entered Text
- Do Not Predict Next Phrase from Entered Phrases
- Set Custom Window
- Set Text Deletion Method
- Reset Prediction Dictionary/Conversion Dictionary

Word List (Japanese)

Saving Frequently Used Words

1 In a text entry window, press [Y'] ➡ *Customize* ➡ [■] ➡ *Word List* ➡ [■]



2 Select *To Word List* ➡ [■] ➡ *Word* ➡ [■] ➡ Enter a word ➡ [■]



3 Select *Reading* ➡ [■] ➡ Enter a reading ➡ [■]



4 Press [Y'] (OK)

Save Words During Text Entry

1 During text entry, move cursor to the first character of target word ➡ [シンプル] (Range･paste)

2 Select *Start* ➡ [■] ➡ Move cursor to the last character ➡ [■]

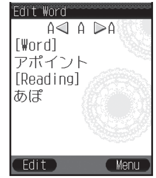
3 Select *To Word List* ➡ [■]

4 Select *Reading* ➡ [■] ➡ Enter a reading ➡ [■]

5 Press [Y'] (OK)

Edit Saved Entries

1 In a text entry window, press [Y'] ➡ *Customize* ➡ [■] ➡ *Word List* ➡ [■] ➡ *Edit Word* ➡ [■]



2 Select a word ➡ [シンプル] (Edit) ➡ Select the word/reading ➡ [■] ➡ Edit the word/reading ➡ [■]

3 Press [Y'] (OK)

More Features

Word List

(▶ page 2-29)

Phone Book

Save phone numbers, e-mail address and other contact information to Phone Book. Access Phone Book information while making calls, writing messages, creating S! Circle Talk groups.

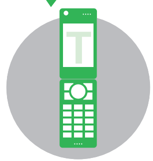
Phone Book Entry Items

Contact & Personal Info

Name & Reading	Job Title
Entry Number	Company
Phone Numbers	Birthday
E-mail Addresses	URL
Picture	Location Information
Group	Note
Address	

Settings

External Light	Ringtone Duration
Ringtone Volume	Message Folder
Ringtone	Secret
Vibration	External Display



Some Features

Speed Dial

Make calls to people in Phone Book quickly.

Messaging

Specify addresses from Phone Book quickly when writing messages.

S! Addressbook Back-up

Back up Phone Book to server. Sync updates to back up new information.

Reject Calls

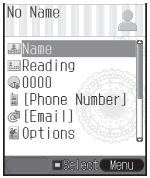
Reject calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book.

- **Back Up Important Information**
  When the battery is exhausted or removed for long periods, Phone Book entries may be lost. Handset damage may also affect handset information recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost or altered data.

Creating New Entries

Example: Saving a name, phone number and e-mail address, and specifying a group.

1 **Press ■ ➡*Phone Book* ➡■➡*New Entry*➡■**



Phone Book Entry Window

2 **Select *Name* ➡■➡*Last Name* or *First Name* ➡■➡Enter a last name/ first name➡■➡ (OK)**

- Characters entered for name (reading for kanji) appear.
- To correct the reading, select a reading field (last name or first name) and edit the information.
- When you save to USIM Phone Book, enter both the first name and last name in the ***Name*** field.



3 **Select *Phone Number* ➡■➡Enter a phone number➡■➡Select a category➡■**

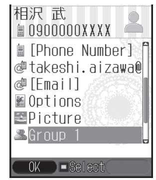
- To enter a hyphen "-" or a pause "P" (page 3-14), press Y! and then select ***Manual Hyphen*** or ***Pause (P)***.



4 **Select *Email* ➡■➡Enter an e-mail address➡■➡Select a category➡■**



5 **Select *No Group* ➡■➡Select a group ➡■**



6 **Press (OK)**

Setting a Picture

1 From Phone Book Entry Window, select *Picture*➡■

2 Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡■

- To capture an image:
  Select ***Take Picture***➡■➡Take a picture➡■
  For details on taking pictures, see page 7-3.

3 Select *Pictures* or *Digital Camera*➡■ ➡Select a picture➡■ (twice)

- If the selected picture does not fit in the prescribed frame, adjust the picture size (page 7-9).



- If Details of a picture file (page 2-31) indicate that the file is ***Unavailable*** for forwarding, the picture file cannot be set as Picture.

Setting Personal Ringtones

1 From Phone Book Entry Window, select *Options*➡■

2 Select a type of incoming event➡■ ➡*Ringtone*➡■



3 Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡■

- To set a preinstalled ringtone:
  Select ***Patterns*** or ***Melodies***➡■➡
  Select a ringtone pattern➡■
- If you select ***Same as Phone***, the ringtone will be the same as the corresponding setting of Sounds.

4 Select a folder➡■➡Select a ringtone pattern➡■ (twice)

Secret Entries

Set specific Phone Book entries as secret so other people cannot see them.

1 From Phone Book Entry Window, select *Options*➡■

2 Select *Secret*➡■➡*ON*➡■



- indicates a secret entry.
- To view secret entries, switch Secret Mode (page 11-4) to ***Show***.

Saving Numbers from Call Log

1 **Press** ▪▢/▢▪



- To switch between Dialed and Received, press ▪▢/▢▪.

2 **Select a phone number**➡ ➡***To Phone Book*** ➡■➡***Add New*** ➡■

- To add a phone number to an existing Phone Book entry, select ***Add*** and select an entry.

Using Phone Book

Calling from Phone Book

1 **Press**



- Press ▪▢ or ▢▪ to access the previous or next index tab.

2 **Select an entry**➡■



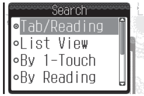
- Press ▪▢ or ▢▪ to scroll entries within the same index tab.

3 **Select a phone number**➡

- In Standby, press and hold a number key (1 to 9) to access the corresponding index tab. Then, enter the first character(s) of the name to find an entry.

Changing Search Mode

1 **Press** [key] ➡ [Y!] ➡ ***Search Mode*** ➡ [■]



2 **Select a search mode** ➡ [■]

- Select from the following search modes.
  Tab/Reading (default):
  Enter reading (or partial reading) to search entries or select tab to scroll through entries.
  List View:
  Select tab then scroll through entries.
  By 1-Touch*:
  Search entries by the first letter of names. Press corresponding number key ([1 .@あ] to [9 WXYZら]).
  By Reading:
  Enter reading (or partial reading) to search entries.
  By Memory No.:
  Search by entry number (Memory Number). Enter target entry number.
  By Phone No.:
  Search by entering a phone number.
  Group Filter:
  Search entries by Group.

* *2タッチ検索* (By 2-Touch), if *言語選択* (Language) is set to *日本語* (Japanese). In By 2-Touch search, select the first character of a reading (Press a key from [0 +-、。わ] to [9 WXYZら], [* ゛゜絵] or [# A/a記号] ➡ Press [1 .@あ] to [5 JKLな]).

More Features

Phone Book Entry Functions
(► page 2-29)

Customizing by Entry
(► page 2-30)

Managing Phone Book
(► page 2-30)

Phone Book Settings
(► page 13-35)

- Change Storage Location
- Prohibit Use of Phone Book

Settings for Phone Book Groups
(► page 13-35)

- Edit a Group Name/Group Icon

Data Folder

Data Folder Structure

Use Data Folder to save and manage files on handset. Files are saved to folders by file format.

Preset Folders

Pictures
Picture files including those taken with the camera, My Pictograms & Mail Art folders

Digital Camera*1
Pictures taken in Digital mode

Ring Song·Tone
Sound files such as melodies, sounds recorded with Voice Recorder

S! Appli
Downloaded S! Appli

Music
Downloaded music files, Chaku-Uta Full®

Videos
Video files including those recorded with the camera

Lifestyle-Appli*2
Lifestyle-Appli for using Osaifu-Keitai®

Books
Electronic comic books, photo albums, etc.

Templates
Graphic Mail template files



Flash(R)
Flash® image files & Flash(R) Tones folder

Main Menu*2
Image files for Main Menu

Gamendeco
Icon/image files for screen decoration

Keitaideco
Keitaideco files

Mini Tool*2
Mini Tool image files & Mini Photo folder

Other Documents
Files in other formats, not saved to the folders listed above, such as vObjects, text files, etc.

- Files saved on handset may be altered or lost by improper use, accidents, or mechanical failure. Always back up important files.
- 🔒 indicates files requiring content usage rights. Press [Y!] and select ***Buy Key*** to obtain a content key.

*1 Shown only in memory card Data Folder.
*2 Shown only in handset Data Folder.

Opening Files

1 **Press ■ ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ■**



Data Folder Window

2 **Select a folder ➡ ■**



3 **Select a file ➡ ■**

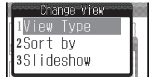
Using Download Links

Some folders contain a link to Yahoo! Keitai. Use links to access Yahoo! Keitai and download content.

Slideshow

1 **Open Data Folder ➡ *Pictures* ➡ ■**

2 **Select a file ➡ Y! ➡ *Change View* ➡ ■**



3 **Select *Slideshow* ➡ ■**

- To end slideshow, press クリア/メモ.

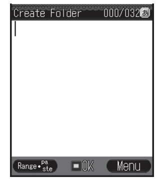
Managing Files and Folders

Creating a Folder

Folders can be created in ***Pictures***, ***Ring Song•Tone***, ***Music***, ***Videos***, ***Books***, ***Flash(R)***, ***Main Menu***, ***Gamendeco***, ***Mini Tool*** and ***Other Documents***.

1 **Open Data Folder ➡ Select a folder ➡ ■**

2 **Press Y! ➡ *Create Folder* ➡ ■**



3 **Enter a folder name ➡ ■**

Moving Files

1 **Open Data Folder➡Select a folder ➡■**

2 **Select a file➡[Y!]➡*Move*➡■**

3 **Select *One*➡■**

- To move multiple files: Select ***Select Multi***➡■➡Select files➡■➡[✉] (Move)
- To move all files: Select ***All***➡■➡Enter Handset Code



4 **Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡■**

5 **Select a destination folder➡■**

- To create a new folder in a folder other than ***Pictures***: Press [✉] (Create)➡Enter a folder name ➡■
- To create a new folder in ***Pictures***: Select ***Pictures***➡■➡[✉] (Create)➡Enter a folder name➡■

- When you move a still picture file taken in Digital mode to memory card, or a music file in MPEG-4 format (.3GP, .MP4 and .M4A) to another folder, select the fixed folder first and then select a destination folder.

Setting Folder Security

Set Security Lock to a folder to require Handset Code entry when accessing files in the folder.

1 **Open Data Folder➡Select a folder you created➡[Y!]➡*Security Lock*➡■**

2 **Enter Handset Code➡*ON*➡■**

More Features

Opening Files (▶ page 2-31)

Using Files (▶ page 2-32)

Managing Files/Folders (▶ page 2-33)

Memory Card

Save files to memory cards.

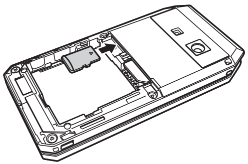
- This manual refers to a microSD/microSDHC memory card as "memory card".
- Handset may not read/write files when battery level is low.
- Never remove memory card or battery while accessing/formatting files. Doing so may damage memory card resulting in lost files.
- Files on memory cards may be altered or lost from improper use, accidents or mechanical failure. Back up important files.
- Do not put labels or stickers on memory cards.
- For details on saving files to a memory card, see the corresponding explanation for each function.
- Handset supports microSD memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 2 GB and microSDHC memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 8 GB (as of September 2008). There is no guarantee that all memory cards will work with handset.

Memory Card Structure and File Storage Locations

Folder Name	File Type
DCIM	Pictures taken in Digital mode
PRIVATE	
PRIVATE/MYFOLDER	
PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/Mail	Message backup files
PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items	Folders in Data Folder (Pictures, My Pictograms, Mail Art, Videos, Ring Song・Tone, Music, Templates, Flash(R), Flash(R) Tones, Books, S! Appli, Other Documents), bookmark backup files
PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/TS_Folder	Handset settings (backed up by Relocate function), Gamendeco/Keitaideco files, Media Player files, Ku-man's Room files
PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/Utility	
PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/Utility/Calendar	Event backup files
PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/Utility/Contacts	Phone Book data and backup files
PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/Utility/Memo	Notepad backup files
PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/Utility/Rights	Content key backup files
PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/Utility/Tasks	Tasks backup files

Inserting Memory Card

Turn handset off and remove the battery before inserting a memory card.



1 **Insert memory card until it locks into position (gold terminal should face down)**

Removing Memory Card

Turn handset off and remove the battery cover and battery. Gently push to eject card. Slide card out gently.

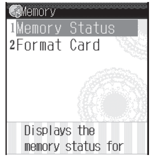
- Be cautious when ejecting a memory card; may abruptly pop out.

Formatting Memory Card

Formatting memory card deletes all data on the memory card.

- Memory cards formatted on PCs or other devices may be unreadable on handset.

1 **Press ■ ➡*Settings*➡ ■ ➡*Memory* ➡ ■**



2 **Select *Format Card*➡ ■ ➡Enter Handset Code➡*YES*➡ ■**

Opening Memory Card Data

1 **Press ■ ➡*Data Folder*➡ ■ ➡ ▭**



2 **Select a folder➡ ■**



3 **Select a file➡ ■**

More Features

Opening Files

(▶ page 2-31)

Display

Menus

From ➡ Main Menu page 2-2
Phone Settings Window page 2-3

Reset Main Menu (Icons/Wallpaper)

Main Menu [Y!] ➡ ***Reset Options*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***YES*** ➡ [■]

Reset Multi Selector Assignment

Phone Settings Window ***Navigation Keys*** ➡ [■] ➡ [Y!] ➡ ***Reset*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***YES*** ➡ [■]

Rename Shortcut Titles

[⌂] ➡ Select a function ➡ [Y!] ➡ ***Edit Title*** ➡ [■] ➡ Enter a title ➡ [■]

- You cannot edit the titles of preset Shortcut functions.

Customize Shortcuts Menu Icons

[⌂] ➡ Select a function ➡ [Y!]

■Setting a Preinstalled Icon

Change Icon ➡ [■] ➡ ***Preset Icons*** ➡ [■] ➡ Select an icon ➡ [■]

■Setting an Image in Data Folder/Memory Card

Change Icon ➡ [■] ➡ ***Phone Memory*** or ***Memory Card*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***Pictures*** ➡ [■] ➡ Select an image ➡ [■] ➡ [✥] to compose the image ➡ [Y!] ➡ [■]

- You cannot change the icons of preset Shortcut functions.

■Moving Icons

Arrange Icons ➡ [■] ➡ Select a destination ➡ [■]

Delete Shortcut Icons

[⌂] ➡ Select a function ➡ [Y!]

■Deleting One Entry

Delete ➡ [■] ➡ ***YES*** ➡ [■]

■Deleting All Entries

Delete All ➡ [■] ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ***YES*** ➡ [■]

- You cannot delete Main Menu icon.

Simple Mode

From ➡ Main Menu page 2-6

Change Main Menu Pattern

Main Menu [Y!] ➡ ***Menu Patterns*** ➡ [■] ➡ Select a pattern ➡ [■]

Show Main Menu Guide

Main Menu [Y!] ➡ ***Guidance*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***ON*** ➡ [■]

Open Full Menu in Simple Mode

Main Menu ***Full Menu*** ➡ [■]

Assign a 1-touch Number/Address to Softkeys

Main Menu *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Save 1-touch* ➡ ■ ➡ *Soft Key 1* or *Soft Key 2* ➡ ■ ➡ *From Phone Book* or *New No./Address* ➡ ■ ➡ Select/create a Phone Book entry ➡ ✉

- Select *Soft Key 1* to assign a Phone Book entry to Left Softkey, and *Soft Key 2* to Right Softkey.

■Calling/Sending a Message to a 1-touch Number/Address

✉/Y! ➡ *Voice Call*, *Video Call*, *Message (Phone #)* or *Message (Address)* ➡ ■

Active Window

From ➡ Shortcut Mode page 2-8
Communication Mode page 2-8

Always Show Active Window

■ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Display* ➡ ■ ➡ *Idle Screen* ➡ ■ ➡ *Main Display* ➡ ■ ➡ *Active Window* ➡ ■ ➡ *ON (Always)* ➡ ■

- When *OFF* is set, Active Window does not open even by pressing ⏏ in Standby.

Set Shortcut Mode View

Shortcut Mode Y! ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Templates* ➡ ■ ➡ *Member/News*, *Member*, *News* or *News: No Image* ➡ ■

Edit Members List

Communication Mode Y! ➡ *Edit List* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a member ➡ ■ ➡ *YES* ➡ ■ ➡ *Friend Status* or *Phone Book* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an entry ➡ ■

- To add a new member, select *Edit List*, then *Not Registered*, and press ■.

Change Members List Icons

Communication Mode Select a member ➡ Y! ➡ *Change Icon* ➡ ■ ➡ *Phone Book* or *Icon* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an icon ➡ ■

Show/Hide My Status

Communication Mode Y! ➡ *Edit List* ➡ ■ ➡ *My Status ON* or *My Status OFF* ➡ ■ (ON/OFF)

Check a Member's Status

Communication Mode ◈ to select a member ➡ Y! ➡ *View* ➡ ■

Text Entry

Insert Line Break

In a text entry window, enter characters and convert ➡ ◈ to insert line break

- Alternatively, press and hold #A/a記号.
- To insert line break to the left of a determined character, access line break from the symbol list (page 2-11).
- Line break is unavailable in some text entry windows.

Insert a Space

In a text entry window, [▫▪]
- To insert a space to the left of a determined character, select a space from the symbol list (page 2-11).

Use Single Kanji Conversion

Example: Entering *鱸* (すずき)

In a text entry window, enter *すずき*→[↰] (twice)→Select *鱸* from the suggestion list→[■]
- When *単漢候補* (Single Kanji Conversion List) does not appear in a text entry window, the entered characters cannot be converted with Single Kanji conversion.

Convert a Name One Character at a Time

Example: Entering *亜香梨* (あかり)

In a text entry window, enter *あかり*→[▴]→[✣] to select *名前変換* (Name Conversion)→[■]→Select *亜*→[■]→Select *香*→[■]→Select *梨*→[■] (twice)

Conversion Prediction/Phrase Prediction

Handset is equipped with MobileRUPO™, Toshiba's kana-kanji conversion engine.

* MobileRUPO™ is a trademark of Toshiba Corporation.

■Using Conversion Prediction

Example: Entering *お父さん*

In a text entry window, [1 .@ あ] (five times)→[4 GHI た] (five times)→[▾]→[✣] to select *お父さん*→[■]

■Using Phase Prediction

Example: Entering the same phrase *渋谷でライブ* that you have entered before

In a text entry window, enter *し*→[▾]→[✣] to select *渋谷*→[■]→[▾]→[✣] to select *で*→[■]→[▾]→[✣] to select *ライブ*→[■]

Save Original Emoticons

In a text entry window, [TV/絵文字]→ (^—^) →[■]→***User Created***→[■]→Select an empty item→[シンプル/✉]→Create an emoticon→[■] (twice)

Text Entry Functions

Font Size

In a text entry window, [Y!]→***Customize***→[■]→***Font Size***→[■]→Select a font size→[■]

Insert Phone Book Information

In a text entry window, [Y!]→***Insert***→[■]

■Inserting Phone Book Information

Phone Book→[■]→Select a Phone Book entry→[■]→Select an item→[■]

■Inserting Other Information

My Details, ***Phrases***, ***Emoticon***, ***Signature***, ***Notepad***, ***Message Box*** or ***URL History***→[■]

Save Text to Notepad

Scroll to beginning of text range➡[key]➡*Start*➡[■]➡Move cursor to end of text➡[■]➡*To Notepad*➡[■]➡Select an entry➡[■]

- Used entries will be overwritten.

Save Numbers/E-mail Addresses to Phone Book

Scroll to beginning of text range➡[key]➡*Start*➡[■]➡Move cursor to end of text➡[■]➡*To Phone Book*➡[■]➡*Add New* or *Add*➡[■]

- See "Creating New Entries" (page 2-17) for entering other items.
- If selected item contains characters or symbols not savable to Phone Book, the entry is not saved.

Reconvert Determined Text

Scroll to beginning of text range➡[key]➡*Start*➡[■]➡Move cursor to end of text➡[■]➡*Convert*➡[■]

■Converting Hiragana to Kanji

Kana/Kanji➡[■]➡Select a word from the suggestion list➡[■]

■Converting All into Full/Half Width

Full Width or *Half Width*➡[■]

■Converting All Roman Characters into Upper/Lower Case

Upper Case or *Lower Case*➡[■]

Replace Text with Clipboard Entry

Scroll to beginning of text range➡[key]➡*Start*➡[■]➡Move cursor to end of text➡[■]➡*Replace*➡[■]➡Select text from clipboard➡[■]

Word List

Delete All Entries

In a text entry window, [key]➡*Customize*➡[■]➡*Word List*➡[■]➡*Delete All*➡[■]➡Enter Handset Code➡*YES*➡[■]

Phone Book

Phone Book Entry Functions

From ➡ Phone Book Entry Window page 2-17

Save Other Information

■Address/Job Title/Company

Phone Book Entry Window *Personal Info.*➡[■]➡Select an item➡[■]➡Enter an item➡[■]➡[key]

■Birthday

Phone Book Entry Window *Personal Info.*➡[■]➡*Birthday*➡[■]➡Enter birthday➡[■]➡[key]

- Enter four digits for the year and if the month or date is a single digit, prefix it with a 0.

■URL

Phone Book Entry Window *Personal Info.*➡[■]➡*URL*➡[■]➡Enter a URL➡[■]➡*Home* or *Business*➡[■]➡[key]

■Note

Phone Book Entry Window *Note*➡[■]➡Enter a reminder➡[■]

■Memory Number (Entry Number)

Phone Book Entry Window Select the current entry number➡[■]➡Enter a new entry number➡[■]

Set Location Information

Phone Book Entry Window ***Personal Info.***➡■➡***No Location***➡■

■Setting Your Current Position

Position➡■➡Perform positioning➡■➡✉

■Setting from Location Logs/My Locations

Location Logs or ***My Locations***➡■➡Select location information➡■➡✉

Check Number of Entries

■➡***Phone Book***➡■➡***Memory Status***➡■

- Press ✉ (Count) / ✉ (Rate) to switch between the number of entries and the usage rate.
- When Secret Mode is set to ***Hide***, secret entries are excluded from the number of entries.

Customizing by Entry

Ringtone Volume

Phone Book Entry Window ***Options***➡■➡***Voice Call***, ***Video Call***, ***Message***, ***Circle Talk*** or ***Notification***➡■➡***Ringtone Vol.***➡■➡***Options*** or ***Same as Phone***➡■➡Set volume level➡■

External Light/Vibration

Phone Book Entry Window ***Options***➡■➡***Voice Call***, ***Video Call***, ***Message***, ***Circle Talk*** or ***Notification***➡■

■External Light

ExternalLight➡■➡Select a color, ***OFF*** or ***Same as Phone***➡■

■Vibration

Vibration➡■➡Select a pattern, ***OFF*** or ***Same as Phone***➡■

Ringtone Duration (New Message/Notification)

Phone Book Entry Window ***Options***➡■➡***Message*** or ***Notification***➡■➡***Duration***➡■➡***Set Duration***, ***1 Cycle*** or ***Same as Phone***➡■➡Enter a ring time➡■

Filter Messages

Phone Book Entry Window ***Options***➡■➡***Message***➡■➡***MessageFolder***➡■➡Select a folder or ***None***➡■

Show/Hide Caller/Sender Name (External Display)

Phone Book Entry Window ***Options***➡■➡***Ext. Display***➡■➡***ON***, ***OFF*** or ***Same as Phone***➡■

Customize Incoming Event Alerts by Group

■➡***Phone Book***➡■➡***Group***➡■➡Select a group➡■➡***Options***➡■

- See "Setting Personal Ringtones" (page 2-18) for following operations.

Managing Phone Book

Switch Phone Book (USIM/Handset/Memory Card)

☐➡✉➡***Change View***➡■➡Select a storage location➡■

- The storage location of each Phone Book entry is indicated by the following icons:
  - Handset
  - USIM Card
  - Memory card

Sort Entries

⇒ ⇒ ***Sort by*** ⇒ ■ ⇒ ***Alphabet*** or ***Birthday*** ⇒ ■

- Available when Search Mode (page 2-20) is set to ***List View***, ***By 1-Touch*** or *2ﾀｯﾁ検索* (By 2-Touch).

Edit Entries

⇒Select a Phone Book entry⇒ ■ ⇒Select an item⇒ ■ ⇒Edit the item⇒ ■ ⇒ ⇒ ***Save*** or ***Save as New*** ⇒ ■

Copy/Move Entries

■Copying/Moving One Entry

⇒Select a Phone Book entry⇒ ⇒ ***Copy*** or ***Move*** ⇒ ■ ⇒ ***One*** ⇒ ■ ⇒ ***Phone Memory***, ***USIM*** or ***Memory Card*** ⇒ ■

■Copying/Moving Multiple Entries

⇒ ⇒ ***Copy*** or ***Move*** ⇒ ■ ⇒ ***Select Multi*** ⇒ ■ ⇒Select Phone Book entries⇒ ■ ⇒ (Copy)/ (Move)⇒ ***Phone Memory***, ***USIM*** or ***Memory Card*** ⇒ ■

■Copying/Moving All Entries

⇒ ⇒ ***Copy*** or ***Move*** ⇒ ■ ⇒ ***All*** ⇒ ■ ⇒ ***Phone Memory***, ***USIM*** or ***Memory Card*** ⇒ ■

- The items you can save to Phone Book differ depending on the storage location (handset, USIM or memory card).

Delete Entries

■Deleting One Entry

⇒Select a Phone Book entry⇒ ⇒ ***Delete*** ⇒ ■ ⇒ ***One*** ⇒ ■ ⇒ ***YES*** ⇒ ■

■Deleting Multiple Entries

⇒ ⇒ ***Delete*** ⇒ ■ ⇒ ***Select Multi*** ⇒ ■ ⇒Select Phone Book entries⇒ ■ ⇒ ⇒ ***YES*** ⇒ ■

■Deleting All Entries

⇒ ⇒ ***Delete*** ⇒ ■ ⇒ ***All*** ⇒ ■ ⇒Enter Handset Code⇒ ***YES*** ⇒ ■

Data Management

From ⇒ Data Folder Window page 2-22

Opening Files

Change Data Folder View

Data Folder Window ***Pictures***, ***My Pictograms***, ***Mail Art***, ***Digital Camera***, ***Videos***, ***Books***, ***Main Menu***, ***Mini Tool*** or ***Mini Photo*** ⇒ ■ ⇒ ⇒ ***Change View*** ⇒ ■ ⇒ ***View Type*** ⇒ ■ ⇒Select a view type⇒ ■

File Properties

Data Folder Window Select a folder⇒ ■ ⇒Select a file⇒ ⇒ ***Details*** ⇒ ■

Check Available Memory (Data Folder/ Memory Card)

Data Folder Window ***Memory Status*** ⇒ ■

- Press to toggle between handset and memory card.

Using Files

Picture Files

Access Data Folder from each function*➡*Pictures*➡[■]➡Select a file➡[■]➡[✥] to compose the image➡[Y!]➡[■]

* See the following: Customizing Main Menu icon/wallpaper (page 2-3), setting wallpaper (page 2-7), setting incoming call/message images (page 13-2), setting Video Call images (page 13-23), setting Phone Book picture (page 2-18)

- For adjusting the picture size, see page 7-9.
- If a GIF animation is selected, only the first frame (still image) is shown.

Melody/Music/Video and Flash® Files

Access Data Folder from each function*➡*Ring Song•Tone*, *Music*, *Videos*, *Flash(R)* or *Flash(R) Tones*➡[■]➡Select a file➡[■] (twice)

* See the following: Sound settings (page 13-11), setting wallpaper (page 2-7), setting event/task/Reminder alarm tones (page 9-27), setting alarm tone (page 9-32), setting personal ringtones (page 2-18)

Customize User Interface (Keitaideco)

Each Inner Sheet comes with a special QR Code. Scan the code to download Keitaideco (theme-matching user interface, wallpaper, ringtone, incoming images, Gamendeco and Main Menu image).

Press and hold [Y!]➡Frame the QR code in Display➡[■]➡*YES*➡[■]

- Handset automatically sets Keitaideco after download is complete. Individually set Keitaideco items via their respective menus.
- *IdleScreen* under *Wide View* is automatically set to *ON*.
- To scan ordinary QR codes, see page 9-25.
- If battery level is low, handset will not set Keitaideco after download. Keitaideco is saved in Data Folder. Charge battery and set Keitaideco.

■Setting Previously Downloaded Keitaideco

Data Folder Window *Keitaideco*➡[■]➡Select a file➡[■]➡*YES*➡[■]

vObjects

- Convert Phone Book entries, Calendar events and tasks to vObject files and exchange with vObject-compatible SoftBank handsets and PCs.
- vObject compatible software is required to use vObjects on a PC or other device.
- If a vObject file contains large amounts of data, all information may not be transferred.
- Depending on the software used, some vObject characters may become illegible.

■Creating a vObject

Open a function: Phone Book (page 2-16)/ Calendar (page 9-4)/Tasks (page 9-5)/Message (page 4-2)/Bookmarks (page 5-6)/Notepad (page 9-8)➡Select a file to be saved as vObject➡[Y!]➡ ***Export***➡[■]➡***One***➡[■]➡***Phone Memory***, ***Data Folder*** or ***Memory Card***➡[■]➡Select a folder➡[■]

- To save multiple files, do the following. While selecting files to be saved, [Y!]➡***Export***➡[■]➡***Select Multi***➡[■]➡Select files➡[■]➡[シンプル] (Save)/[シンプル] (Export)
- To save all files, do the following. While selecting files to be saved, [Y!]➡ ***Export***➡[■]➡***All***➡[■]

■Importing vObjects into Respective Functions

Data Folder Window ***Other Documents***➡[■]➡ Select a vObject➡[Y!]➡***To Phone Book***, ***To Cal./Tasks***, ***To Messages***, ***To Bookmarks*** or ***To Notepad***➡[■]➡***One***➡[■]

- To import multiple vObjects, do the following. ***Select Multi***➡[■]➡Select vObjects➡[■] ➡[シンプル]

Managing Files/Folders

Change Folder and File Names

■Changing Folder Name

Data Folder Window Select a folder you created➡ [Y!]➡***Rename Folder***➡[■]➡Enter a folder name➡[■]

- If Security Lock is set to the folder, Handset Code entry is required after selecting ***Rename Folder***.

■Changing File Name

Data Folder Window Select a file➡[Y!]➡***Rename***➡ [■]➡Enter a file name➡[■]

- If you change the file name of a music or movie file, its title will not be changed.

Change File Order

Data Folder Window Select a folder➡[■]➡Select a file➡[Y!]➡***Change View***➡[■]➡***Sort by***➡ [■]➡Select a criterion➡[■]

- Files in the memory card cannot be sorted by title.

Move Folders

Data Folder Window Select a folder you created ➡ [Y!] ➡ ***Move Folder*** ➡ [■] ➡ Enter Handset Code

- When moving a folder created in ***Ring Song•Tone*** or ***Music***, do the following.
  Phone Memory or ***Memory Card*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***Ring Song•Tone*** or ***Music*** ➡ [■]

Copy Folders and Files

■Copying a Folder

Data Folder Window Select a folder you created ➡ [Y!] ➡ ***Copy Folder*** ➡ [■] ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ***Phone Memory*** or ***Memory Card*** ➡ [■]

- When copying a folder created in ***Ring Song•Tone*** or ***Music***, select a destination folder from ***Ring Song•Tone*** or ***Music***.

■Copying One File

Data Folder Window Select a folder ➡ [■] ➡ Select a file ➡ [Y!] ➡ ***Copy*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***One*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***Phone Memory*** or ***Memory Card*** ➡ [■] ➡ Select a destination folder ➡ [■]

■Copying Multiple Files

Data Folder Window Select a folder ➡ [■] ➡ [Y!] ➡ ***Copy*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***Select Multi*** ➡ [■] ➡ Select files ➡ [■] ➡ [シンプル] ➡ ***Phone Memory*** or ***Memory Card*** ➡ [■] ➡ Select a destination folder ➡ [■]

■Copying All Files

Data Folder Window Select a folder ➡ [■] ➡ [Y!] ➡ ***Copy*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***All*** ➡ [■] ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ***Phone Memory*** or ***Memory Card*** ➡ [■] ➡ Select a destination folder ➡ [■]

- To create a new folder in a folder other than ***Pictures***:
  While selecting a destination folder, [シンプル] ➡ Enter a folder name ➡ [■]
- To create a new folder in ***Pictures***:
  While selecting a destination folder, ***Pictures*** ➡ [■] ➡ [シンプル] ➡ Enter a folder name ➡ [■]
- If Details indicate that the file is ***Unavailable*** for forwarding, the file cannot be copied.
- When copying picture files taken in Digital mode to memory card, ***Digital Camera*** folder is also selectable.
- When copying MPEG-4 music files (.3GP and .MP4), first select ***Ring Song • Tone*** or ***Music*** folder.

Delete Folders and Files

■Deleting a Folder

Data Folder Window Select a folder you created ➡ [Y!] ➡ ***Delete Folder*** ➡ [■] ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ***YES*** ➡ [■]

■Deleting One File

Data Folder Window Select a folder ➡ [■] ➡ Select a file ➡ [Y!] ➡ ***Delete*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***One*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***YES*** ➡ [■]

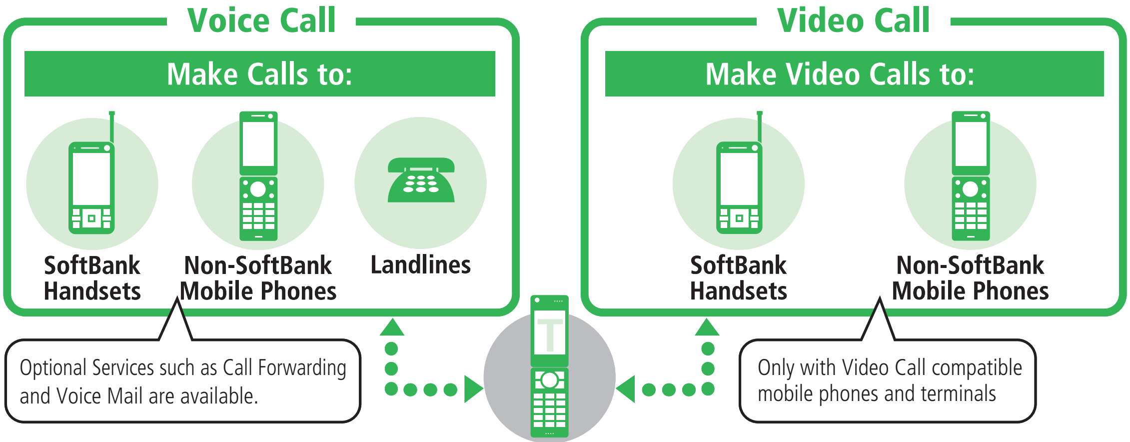
■Deleting Multiple Files

Data Folder Window Select a folder ➡ [■] ➡ [Y!] ➡ ***Delete*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***Select Multi*** ➡ [■] ➡ Select files ➡ [■] ➡ [シンプル] ➡ ***YES*** ➡ [■]

■Deleting All Files

Data Folder Window Select a folder ➡ [■] ➡ [Y!] ➡ ***Delete*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***All*** ➡ [■] ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ***YES*** ➡ [■]

3 Call



International Call

Calling Abroad

Make and receive voice calls and Video Calls.

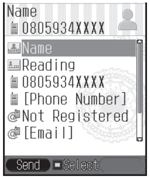
Global Roaming

Using Handset Abroad

Handset is Global Roaming Service eligible.
May require prior application. For details and application, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-48).
Take "Global Roaming Guide" with you when traveling abroad.

My Phone Number

1 **Press** ■ ➡ ***Phone Book*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***My Details*** ➡ ■



- Alternatively, press ■ ➡ 0 ➡ ***My Details*** ➡ ■
- To check your phone number during a call: Press Y! ➡ ***My Details*** ➡ ■

About Emergency Calls

Emergency calls (110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard)) are available, even when Password Lock and/or Call Barring is active.

- If a Video Call is made to an emergency service, the call becomes a voice call.
- In a GSM network area, you cannot make emergency calls during data communication.

Emergency Positioning Request

Caller's location is notified to emergency agencies for emergency calls (110, 119 and 118). Positioning Information uses GPS information, where available, or base station information*.

* If handset signal is received by a distant base station, Positioning Information may not be accurate.

- GPS information is recorded as Location Logs (page 9-31).
- Positioning Information may be inaccurate, depending on the caller's location and signal strength.
- This system may not operate if the responding agency has not installed the proper system.
- If emergency numbers (110, 118 and 119) are dialed with the 184 prefix, Positioning Information is not provided. However, emergency agencies may retrieve location information in life-threatening cases.
- No application fees or connection fees apply.
- This system is unavailable while using handset abroad.

More Features

My Details

(▶ page 3-12)

Making a Voice Call

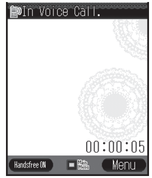
1 Enter a phone number

- Include the area code for all numbers.
- Press [POWER] or press and hold [クリア/メモ] to delete the entire number and return to Standby. Press [クリア/メモ] to delete the last number entered.
- For details on making a call from Phone Book, see page 2-19.



Dial Window

2 Press [Call key]



Voice Call Window

- Use [Multi Selector] during a call to adjust the earpiece volume.

3 Press [POWER] to end the call

- Antenna is built into handset. Signal sensitivity may be reduced by touching/covering Internal Antenna area (page 1-3). Do not cover this area by affixing stickers, or any other items. Doing so may prevent you from making/receiving calls, sending/receiving messages or accessing the Web.
- The orientation and location of handset may affect signal strength.
- When Cost Limit is set and the limit is reached, outgoing voice calls are blocked. If the limit is reached during a call, the call ends.

Answering a Voice Call

When a call arrives, incoming image, External Light, Twinkle Light and ringtone/vibration notify you.

1 Press [Call key]/[■] when a call is received

- Use [Multi Selector] to adjust the ringtone volume while receiving an incoming call.
- To stop the ringtone while receiving an incoming call, press and hold [Camera key].

2 Press [POWER] to end the call

Speed Dial

Abbreviated dialing is possible for phone numbers saved in handset Phone Book.

1 Enter the last two digits of entry number 0010 to 0099 → [✆]

- For entry numbers 0000 through 0009, enter the last digit only and press [✆].

Calling Abroad from Japan

Make international calls from Japan.

1 Enter a phone number → [Y!] → *Intl. Calls* → [■]



Country Number List Window

2 Select a country → [■] → [✆]

3 Press [POWER] to end the call

Calling While Abroad (Global Roaming)

Make international calls from a visiting country.

- Switch to the network system (3G/GSM) (page 13-22) for the country/region you are visiting.

1 Enter a number with area code → [Y!] → *Intl. Calls* → [■]

2 Select a country → [■] → [✆]

- When calling to Japan, select ***Japan*** from Country Number List Window.

3 Press [POWER] to end the call

Calling within Visiting Country

1 Enter a number with area code

- Do not omit 0 from area code.

2 Press [✆].

3 Press [POWER] to end the call

Manual Entry of Country Codes

1 Press [✆] → Press and hold [0]

"+" is entered.

2 Enter a country code

- See "Global Roaming Guide" for country codes.

3 Enter a number with area code → [✆]

- Omit the first 0 from area code except when calling to Italy.

4 Press [POWER] to end the call

Answering Machine

Record callers' messages to handset when you are unable to answer voice calls.

1 Press and hold [クリア/メモ]

Answering Machine is activated.

- When recording capacity becomes full or call ends, recording stops automatically.
- To cancel Answering Machine, press and hold [クリア/メモ].
- Press and hold [クリア/メモ] or [■] to activate Answering Machine while receiving an incoming call.

- Answering Machine is not available for Video Calls and Call Waiting.
- When five messages are recorded, Answering Machine is disabled. Delete messages as follows.
  Press [クリア/メモ] ➡Select a message➡[Y!] ➡***Delete*** ➡[■] ➡***YES***➡[■]
- Messages may not be recorded when an S! Appli is set as Screensaver.
- When Manner Mode is set in Drive Mode, you cannot cancel Answering Machine.
- When Manner Mode is set to Original Mode, Original Mode setting takes priority. Change Answering Machine setting in Original Mode to switch to the preferred setting.

Playing Messages

1 Press [クリア/メモ] ➡Select a message➡[■]



More Features

Outgoing Call Functions
(▶ page 3-12)

Incoming Call Functions
(▶ page 3-13)

Answering Machine Functions
(▶ page 3-13)

Functions During Calls
(▶ page 3-13)

Response Settings for Incoming Calls
(▶ page 13-9)

- Answer Incoming Calls by Opening Handset (Open to Talk)
- Set Any Key Answer

Answering Machine Settings
(▶ page 13-9)

- Set Answering Machine Response Time

International Call Settings
(▶ page 13-22)

- Switch Network Systems (3G/GSM)
- Change International Code
- Add Country Codes to Country Number List
- Set Operator to Use
- Change Priority Order of Operators
- Add an Operator

Earphone-Microphone Settings
(▶ page 13-24)

- Save a Phone Number for Earphone-Microphone Call
- Set Auto Answer
- Set Microphone to Use When Earphone-Microphone is Connected

Video Call

Make Video Calls to other compatible mobile phones.

- You can switch the main and sub cameras, and send a still image instead of live image during Video Calls.

Making a Video Call

1 Enter a phone number and press



The other party answers your Video Call.



Video Call Window

- When ***Self-view*** (page 13-23) is set to ***ON***, check your camera image, and then press to make a call.
- Use during a call to adjust the speaker (earpiece) volume.

2 Press to end the call

- When Cost Limit is set and the limit is reached, outgoing Video Calls are blocked. If the limit is reached during a call, the call ends.

Video Call Icons

Video Call
Mute My Voice
Mute All
Faster Moving Mode
Standard Mode
Better Picture Mode
Handsfree On
Handsfree (Bluetooth® connection)
Image Transfer Off
Sending Picture
Voice Connection Established
Video Connection Established
Earphone-Microphone Connected (when handset microphone is used)
Earphone-Microphone Connected (when earphone microphone is used)

Answering a Video Call

When a Video Call arrives, incoming image, External Light, Twinkle Light and ringtone/vibration notify you.

1 Press / / when a Video Call is received

A confirmation window appears. Select ***YES*** and press to send live camera image.
Press () while the handset is ringing/vibrating to view yourself before sending your camera image.

2 Press to end the call

More Features

Outgoing Call Functions
(▶ page 3-12)

Incoming Call Functions
(▶ page 3-13)

Functions During Calls (Voice & Video)
(▶ page 3-13)

Functions During Calls (Video)
(▶ Page 3-15)

Video Call Settings
(▶ page 13-23)

- Set Alternative Picture
- Set Self-view Check
- Set Incoming Image Quality
- Add a Phone Number to Auto Answer List
- Set Mute
- Set Audio Output
- Set Hold Image

Viewing Dialed Numbers and Received Calls

1 **Press /**



Call Log Window

- Press / to switch between Dialed (outgoing call log) and Received (incoming call log).
- Press (/) to switch between outgoing S! Circle Talk call log and voice call/Video Call log.
- Press (/) to switch between incoming S! Circle Talk call log and voice call/Video Call log.

More Features

Call Log Functions

(▶ page 3-15)

Functions for Call Time and Cost

(▶ page 3-16)

Call Cost Settings

(▶ page 13-22)

- Set Currency & Exchange Rate
- Show Call Cost After Each Call
- Set Maximum Cost Limit

Overview

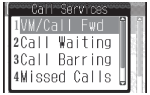
- For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-48).
- Operations are unavailable when out of range.

Call Forwarding	Forward calls to a preset phone number.
Voice Mail	Transfer calls to Voice Mail Center when handset is out of range or line is busy. Access messages from handset or touchtone phones (page 3-11).
Call Waiting*	Place a call on hold to receive another incoming call (page 3-17).
Group Calling*	Make or receive a call during a call and talk to multiple parties simultaneously (page 3-17).
Call Barring	Restrict outgoing/incoming calls and SMS (page 3-17).
Caller ID	Show or hide your phone number when making calls (page 3-12).

* Separate application required.

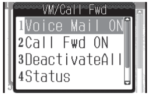
Activating Call Forwarding

1 **Press ■ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Call Services* ➡ ■**



Call Service Settings Menu

2 **Select *VM/Call Fwd* ➡ ■**

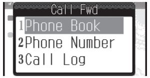


Voice Mail/Call Forwarding Menu

3 **Select *Call Fwd ON* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a type of call ➡ ■**

4 **Select *All Calls* or *No Answer* ➡ ■ ➡ Set response time (skip this step for *All Calls*) ➡ ■**

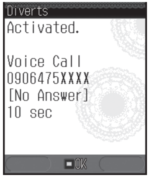
- All Calls: Forwards calls immediately.
  No Answer: Forwards calls after set ring time elapses.



5 **Select *Phone Book, Phone Number* or *Call Log* ➡ ■ ➡ Select or enter phone number ➡ ■ (twice)**

- Phone Book: Search from Phone Book.
  Phone Number: Enter number directly.
  Call Log: Select number from Call Log.

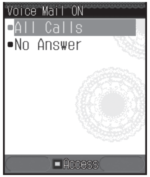
6 **Connect to the network**



7 **Press ■**

Activating Voice Mail

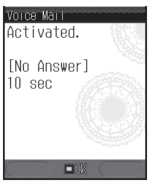
1 **From Voice Mail/Call Forwarding Menu, select *Voice Mail ON*➡[■]**



2 **Select *All Calls* or *No Answer*➡[■]➡ Set response time (skip this step for *All Calls*)➡[■]**

- All Calls: Forwards calls to Voice Mail Center immediately.
  No Answer: Forwards calls to Voice Mail Center after set ring time elapses.

3 **Connect to the network**



4 **Press [■]**

- Call Forwarding and Voice Mail cannot be set simultaneously. If one service is activated, the other will be deactivated (Voice Mail is available with Call Forwarding for Video Calls).
- **Receiving Calls After Activating Call Forwarding/Voice Mail**
  Press [↗] while the ringtone is sounding to talk to the caller. If you set ***All Calls***, handset does not receive calls, but they are forwarded to the preset phone number or Voice Mail Center.
- **Voice Mail Service Options**
  Access the Personal Options menu from Voice Mail Center to set/customize outgoing message. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-48).

Missed Call Notification

Missed Call Notification informs you of calls missed while handset was powered off, out of range or engaged. Once handset is powered on or in signal range, notification appears in Information Prompt. Activate Voice Mail in advance to use this feature.

1 **Enter *1414*➡[↗]**

- Follow the voice prompts.

- From overseas, call +819066514191 (international charges apply).

Checking Messages

1 **From Voice Mail/Call Forwarding Menu, select *Listen VM*➡[■]**

- From overseas, call +819066514170 (international charges apply).

Deactivating Call Forwarding/Voice Mail

1 **From Voice Mail/Call Forwarding Menu, select *DeactivateAll*➡[■]**

Call Forwarding and Voice Mail are deactivated.

- If Call Forwarding/Voice Mail is not activated, forward incoming calls as follows.
  - Voice call: Press [✉] (Divert) while handset is ringing/vibrating
  - Video Call: Press [Y!]➡***Divert*** while handset is ringing/vibrating

More Features

Functions for Optional Services
(▶ page 3-16)

My Details

Save Information to My Details [Save My Details]

■ ➡ ***Phone Book*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***My Details*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select an item ➡ Y' ➡ ***Edit*** ➡ ■ ➡ Enter information ➡ ■ ➡ ✉

■**Entering a Name**

■ ➡ ***Phone Book*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***My Details*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Name*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select an item ➡ Y' ➡ ***Edit*** ➡ ■ ➡ Enter a name ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ (twice)

Use Location Information [Personal Info.]

■ ➡ ***Phone Book*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***My Details*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Personal Info.*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Location Exist*** ➡ Y' ➡ ***Open Map***, ***Location Mail***, ***Add Location*** or ***Delete*** ➡ ■

- To save a location, select ***Personal Info.*** and then do the following.
  No Location ➡ Y' ➡ ***Add Location*** ➡ ■

Outgoing Call Functions

From ➡ Dial Window page 3-4
Voice Call Window page 3-4
Video Call Window page 3-7

Redial [Dialed Numbers]

▭ ➡ Select an entry ➡ ✆ ➡ POWER to end the call

- To make a Video Call, select an entry and press TV.
- To make an S! Circle Talk call, press and hold 📷 when My Status is ***Online*** (page 10-4).

Call from Received Calls [Received Calls]

▭ ➡ Select an entry ➡ ✆ ➡ POWER to end the call

- To make a Video Call, select an entry and press TV.

Show/Hide Caller ID [Show My ID]

Dial Window Y' ➡ ***Hide My ID*** or ***Show My ID*** ➡ ■

Set Earpiece Volume [Earpiece Volume]

■ ➡ ***Settings*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Sounds*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Earpiece Vol.*** ➡ ■ ➡ Set volume level ➡ ■

Set Caller ID On/Off [Show My Number]

■ ➡ ***Settings*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Call Settings*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Show My Number*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select ***Show My ID***, ***Hide My ID*** or ***OFF*** ➡ ■

- When ***OFF*** is selected, Caller ID is set to the setting you selected at time of subscription.
- Following methods are available for setting Caller ID (Priority is given in the listed order when multiple settings are used).
  ① Set before calling (enter number, Y' ➡ ***Hide My ID*** or ***Show My ID*** ➡ ■)
  ② Handset setting (Show My Number)
  ③ Setting chosen at subscription

Make Voice Calls Using Earphone-Microphone
[Earphone-Microphone Call]

- Make one-touch calls from Earphone-Microphone. Before making a call, save a phone number to Earphone-Microphone (page 13-24).

Insert Earphone-Microphone plug into earphone jack➡Press and hold the microphone switch to dial the set phone number➡Press and hold the microphone switch to end the call

- Press and hold the switch again to cancel dialing.
- Press [POWER] to end the call.

Incoming Call Functions

Reject an Incoming Call
[Reject Calls]

[Y!] when a call is received

- To reject an incoming Video Call, press [Y!] and select ***Reject Call***.

Place Incoming Call on Hold
[Hold Answer]

[POWER] when a voice call or Video Call is received

- The caller is charged for the call while placed on hold.
- Pressing [POWER] while the caller is on hold terminates the call.
- When you answer a Video Call that has been placed on hold, the call is connected without the confirmation window asking whether to send the camera image.

Answer Calls with Earphone-Microphone
[Earphone-Microphone Answer]

Insert Earphone-Microphone plug into earphone jack➡Press and hold the microphone switch when a call is received➡Press and hold the microphone switch to end the call

- Press [POWER] to end the call

Answer Incoming Video Calls Automatically
[Auto Answer]

- When Auto Answer is set to ***ON***, Video Calls from numbers in Auto Answer List are automatically answered when handset is open.
- Regardless of Manner Mode setting, the speaker will beep and the Video Call is automatically connected.

[■]➡***Settings***➡[■]➡***Call Settings***➡[■]➡***Video Call***➡[■]➡***Auto Answer***➡[■]➡***ON/OFF***➡[■] (twice)➡***ON***➡[■]

Answering Machine Functions

Delete Recorded Messages

[■]➡***Settings***➡[■]➡***Call Settings***➡[■]➡***Ans Machine***➡[■]➡***Recordings***➡[■]➡Select a message➡[Y!]➡***Delete***➡[■]➡***YES***➡[■]

Functions During Calls

Voice & Video Calls

Mute Audio During a Call
[Mute]

■**Voice Calls**

Voice Call Window [Y!]➡***Mute My Voice*** or ***Mute All***➡[■]

■**Video Calls**

Video Call Window [Y!]➡***Mute***➡[■]➡***Mute My Voice*** or ***Mute All***➡[■]

- Press [■] to cancel mute during a call.

Place a Call on Hold [Hold Call]

Voice Call Window / Video Call Window [Y!]➡*Hold*➡[■]

- Subscription to Call Waiting (page 3-17) or Group Calling (page 3-17) is required to use the Hold feature for voice calls.

Voice Calls

Record Other Party's Voice During a Call [Voice Record During Calls]

Voice Call Window [Y!]➡*Voice Record*➡[■]

- Recording stops when the maximum time is reached or the call ends. To stop recording manually, press [■].
- To play a recording, do the following.
  [■]➡*Tools*➡[■]➡*Useful Tools*➡[■]➡*Voice Recorder*➡[■]➡*Recordings*➡[■]➡*Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*➡[■]➡Select a file➡[■]
- In a GSM network area, you cannot record the other party's voice during a call.

Save Number Memo During a Call [Save Number Memo]

Voice Call Window Press keypad keys

- After the call ends, the number memo is automatically saved.
- You can enter the following numbers and symbols.
  0 to 9, ⁎, #, +, -, P
- To check a number memo, do the following.
  [■]➡*Tools*➡[■]➡*Useful Tools*➡[■]➡*Number Memo*➡[■]➡Select a number memo➡[■]

Talk Handsfree [Handsfree Call]

Voice Call Window [シンプル]

- To cancel handsfree, press [シンプル] (HandsfreeOFF).

Send Touch Tones During a Call [Send Touch Tones]

■**Manually Entering Touch Tones**

Voice Call Window Press a key from [0] to [9], [⁎] or [#]

■**Sending Touch Tone Sequences**

- Save touch tone sequences to Phone Book (page 2-17) and remotely access your answering machine or other devices.

Voice Call Window [Y!]➡*Phone Book*➡[■]➡Select a Phone Book entry➡[■]➡Select a touch tone sequence (phone number) ➡[Y!]➡*Send Tone*➡[■]

■**Adding Pause "P" to Touch Tone Sequence**

- Enter a pause "P" to separate touch tones.

Example: To save 03123XXXX3 (phone number), #7777 (answering machine access code), and #1 (answering machine playback command), enter the following in the Phone Number field.

03123XXXX3P#7777P#1

Open the Phone Book entry➡[✆] (handset calls phone number before the first "P") ➡[■] (handset sends next set of touch tones)

- Repeat this step until all the touch tones have been sent.

Video Calls

Toggle Audio Output (Earpiece/Speaker) [Handsfree On/Off]

Video Call Window
(Handsfree ON/HandsfreeOFF)

Zoom Outgoing Image [Zoom]

Video Call Window

- Zoom is unavailable when a still picture is set for outgoing image.

Switch Main & Sub Cameras During a Call [Switch Cameras]

Video Call Window (Switch)

Switch Outgoing/Incoming Image Windows [Switch Windows]

Video Call Window → ***Screen Set.*** → → ***Switch*** → → ***In. Prior***, ***Incoming Only***, ***Out. Prior*** or ***Outgoing Only*** →

Set Still Picture for Outgoing Image [Send Picture]

Video Call Window → ***Send Picture*** → → ***Send Pic. ON*** → → ***Phone Memory*** or ***Memory Card*** → → Select a picture →

Change Alternative Picture [Alternative Picture]

Video Call Window → ***Alt. Picture*** → → ***Alt. Pic. ON*** →

- When ***Alt. Pic. OFF*** is set, the camera image is sent to the other party.

■Selecting Default Image

Preset →

■Selecting an Image in Data Folder/ Memory Card

Phone Memory or ***Memory Card*** → → Select an image →

- Handset automatically adjusts the image size. Some images may be unavailable depending on the image size.

Change Incoming Image Quality [Image Quality]

Video Call Window → ***Screen Set.*** → → ***Image Quality*** → → Select an item →

Call Log Functions

From → Call Log Window page 3-9

Delete Call Log Records [Delete/Delete All]

■Deleting a Record

Call Log Window Select a record → → ***Delete*** → → ***Delete*** → → ***YES*** →

■Deleting All Records

Call Log Window → ***Delete*** → → ***Delete All*** → → Enter Handset Code → ***YES*** →

Lock Call Log [Call Log Lock]

Call Log Window → ***Call Log Lock*** → → Enter Handset Code → ***Lock*** →

- To cancel the lock, select ***Unlock***.

Functions for Call Time and Cost

View Call Time and Cost [Call Time & Cost]

■ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Call Time&Cost* ➡ ■ ➡ *All Calls* or *Last Call* ➡ ■ ➡ *Time* or *Cost* ➡ ■

- Use Call Time & Cost as an estimate only. Actual bill may differ.
- Total call time does not include mail, Web, and S! Circle Talk connection fees.
- Up to 277 hours 46 minutes and 39 seconds can be counted for the total call time.
- Sum of charges appears for Group Calling (page 3-17).
- The total call cost does not include mail/ Internet/S! Circle Talk connection fees.
- Call cost does not appear for international calls.
- Call costs (Last Call, All Calls and Cost Limit) may be unavailable depending on subscription.

Reset Total Call Time

■ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Call Time&Cost* ➡ ■ ➡ *All Calls* ➡ ■ ➡ *Time* ➡ ■ ➡ Y! ➡ *Reset* ➡ ■ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ *YES* ➡ ■

Reset Total Call Cost

■ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Call Time&Cost* ➡ ■ ➡ *All Calls* ➡ ■ ➡ *Cost* ➡ ■ ➡ Y! ➡ *Reset* ➡ ■ ➡ Enter PIN2 (page 14-2) ➡ ■ ➡ *YES* ➡ ■

Functions for Optional Services

From ➡ Voice Call Window page 3-4
Call Service Settings Menu page 3-10
Voice Mail/Call Forwarding Menu page 3-10

Optional Service Setting Status

Check Optional Service Setting Status [Status]

■Call Forwarding/Voice Mail

Voice Mail/Call Forwarding Menu *Status* ➡ ■

■Call Waiting

Call Service Settings Menu *Call Waiting* ➡ ■ ➡ *Status* ➡ ■

■Call Barring

Call Service Settings Menu *Call Barring* ➡ ■ ➡ *Status* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a type of restriction ➡ ■

Call Waiting

Set Call Waiting
[Call Waiting On/Off]

Call Service Settings Menu ***Call Waiting*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ➡ ■

Answer an Incoming Call During a Call
[Call Waiting]

During a call, Call Waiting tone is heard ➡ Y! ➡ ***Answer*** ➡ ■

Switch Between Two Callers
[Switch Parties]

During Call Waiting ➡ 2ABCか ✓

- Press 2ABCか ✓ to switch between parties.
- If a caller terminates a call during Call Waiting, a ringtone sounds and ***Holding.*** appears. Press ✓ to start talking with the other person on hold.

Group Calling

Call Another Party
[Call During a Call]

Voice Call Window Enter a phone number ➡ ✓

- Alternatively, press Y! and select an entry from Phone Book (page 2-19) or Dialed/Received (page 3-9).

Switch Between Parties
[Switch Parties]

Voice Call Window Enter a phone number ➡ ✓ ➡ When the other party answers, 2ABCか ✓

- Press 2ABCか ✓ to switch between parties.
- If a caller terminates a call during a call, a ringtone sounds and ***Holding.*** appears. Press ✓ to start talking with another person on hold.

Talk to Multiple Parties
[Group Calling]

Voice Call Window Enter a phone number ➡ ✓ ➡ When the other party answers, Y! ➡ ***Group Calling*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Group Calling*** ➡ ■

- During Group Calling, press POWER to end the call with all parties simultaneously.
- If one person ends the call during Group Calling, the other parties remain connected.
- To talk to just one person during Group Calling:
  Select a party to talk with ➡ Y! ➡ ***Group Calling*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Private*** ➡ ■

Call Barring

Restrict Outgoing and Incoming Calls and SMS Messages
[Call Barring]

Call Service Settings Menu ***Call Barring*** ➡ ■

■Restricting Outgoing Calls and SMS

Outgoing Call ➡ ■ ➡ ***All Outgoings***, ***All Out-Intl.*** or ***Out-Intl.*** ➡ ■ ➡ Enter Call Barring Service Code (page 1-16) ➡ Connect to the network automatically ➡ ■

■Restricting Incoming Calls and SMS

Incoming Call ➡ ■ ➡ ***All Incomings*** or ***All If Roamed*** ➡ ■ ➡ Enter Call Barring Service Code ➡ Connect to the network automatically ➡ ■

■Deactivating Call Barring

Cancel All ➡ ■ ➡ Enter Call Barring Service Code ➡ Connect to the network automatically ➡ ■

- After network connection, status appears. If status does not appear, try procedure again.
- Emergency calls (110, 119 and 118) are available even when Call Barring is activated.
- Some Call Barring services (***All Outgoings*** and ***All Incomings***) are unavailable when Call Forwarding or Voice Mail is set.
- If Call Barring Service Code is incorrectly entered three consecutive times, Call Barring settings are locked. Change Call Barring Service Code and Center Access Code (page 1-16). For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-48).

Change Call Barring Service Code [Call Barring Service Code]

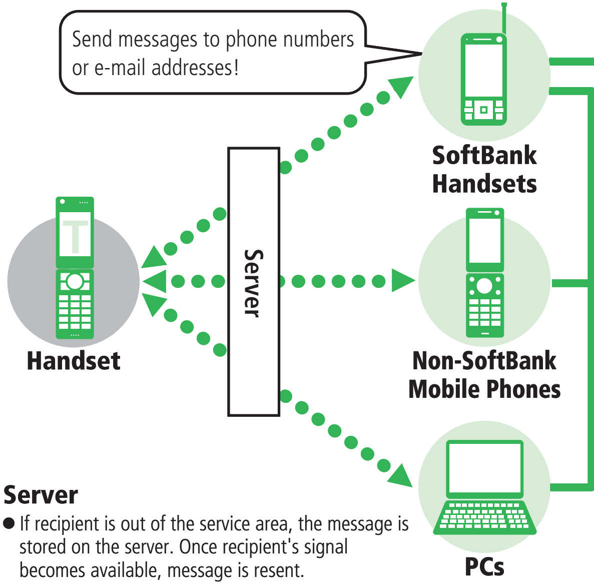
Call Service Settings Menu ***Call Barring***➡[■]➡***Security Code***➡[■]➡Enter current Call Barring Service Code➡Enter new Call Barring Service Code➡[■]➡Re-enter new Call Barring Service Code for confirmation➡[■]

- After connecting to the network, a setting completed window appears. If the window does not appear, follow the procedure again.

4 Messaging

Message Types

Handset supports S! Mail (MMS) and SMS.



Available Messaging Services

SMS

Use Short Message Service (SMS) to exchange short text messages with other SoftBank handsets.

S! Mail (separate contract required)

Exchange long text messages, pictures, sounds, etc. with S! Mail compatible SoftBank handsets, non-SoftBank mobile phones and PCs that support e-mail.

S! Mail is better than ever.

Graphic Mail

Change text size, text color, background color and insert images and pictograms.

Feeling Mail

Set your mood when sending messages to compatible SoftBank handsets. Recipient's handset shows your mood accordingly.

Server

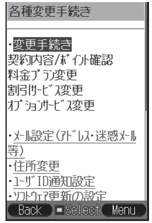
- If recipient is out of the service area, the message is stored on the server. Once recipient's signal becomes available, message is resent.
- Incoming SMS/S! Mail (including attachments) are automatically downloaded to handset. Charges are incurred according to your subscription.

Customizing Handset Address

Change the account name (part before @) of your handset e-mail address.
□□□□□□□□□□□□@softbank.ne.jp

- For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-48).
- This operation uses Yahoo! Keitai access.
- Before using Messaging service, retrieve network connection information (page 1-12).
- A random alphanumeric text string is assigned at the time of contract. Composing a long e-mail address using single-byte alphanumerics and symbols is an effective way for preventing spam.

1 **Press [Y!] ➡ *設定・申込* (Settings/Applications) ➡ [■] ➡ *各種変更手続き* (Changing Applications) ➡ [■]**



2 **Select *メール設定(アドレス・迷惑メール等)* (Mail settings (Owner's mail address, spam mails, etc.)) ➡ [■]**

- Follow the onscreen instructions.

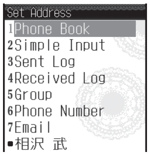
Sending S! Mail

1 **Press ✉ ➡ *Create New* ➡ ■**



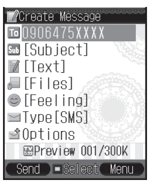
Create Message Window

2 **Select *Address* ➡ ■**



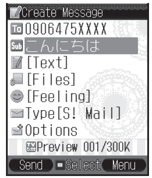
Set Address Window

3 **Select *Phone Number* or *Email* ➡ ■ ➡ Enter a phone number/e-mail address ➡ ■**



- To select an address from Phone Book: Select ***Phone Book*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select an entry ➡ ■ ➡ Select a phone number/ e-mail address ➡ ■
- You can select from the three most recently sent addresses in Set Address Window.

4 **Select *Subject* ➡ ■ ➡ Enter a subject ➡ ■**



5 **Select *Text* ➡ ■ ➡ Enter text ➡ ■**



6 **Press ✉ (Send) ➡ *OK* ➡ ■**

- If you select ***Notify Only Once*** in the sending confirmation/completed window, the window will not appear from the next time.

- If you enter an e-mail address or input text that cannot be sent by SMS, the mail type automatically changes to S! Mail.
- S! Mail you send may look different on a receiving handset if it does not support S! Mail.

Attaching Files

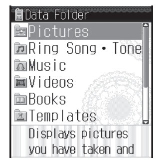
Attach an image or melody to an S! Mail.

1 **From Create Message Window, select *Files* ➡ ■**

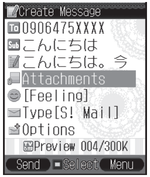


Attachments Menu

2 **Select *Data Folder* ➡ ■ ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ■**



3 **Select a folder➡■➡Select a file ➡■**



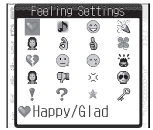
- Some files may not be able to be attached to messages. To find out whether a file can be attached or not, check Details of the file (page 2-31).

Feeling Mail

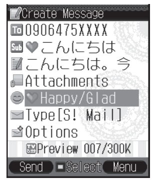
When Feeling Mail arrives, graphics corresponding with sender's mood appears in Information Prompt. Vibration and External Light also respond accordingly.

- Handset response for incoming Feeling Mail varies by recipient's handset.

1 **From Create Message Window, select *Feeling*➡■**



2 **Select a pictograph➡■**



- If Feeling Mail is sent to non-compatible handsets, regular pictographs appear in the subject field.

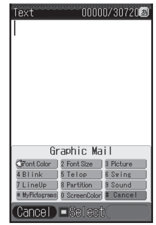
Graphic Mail

Send HTML mail to change font size, font color, background color, add moving text, insert images, etc.

Example: Changing the font size and background color, and inserting a picture

1 **From Create Message Window, select *Text*➡■**

2 **Press ✉➡*GraphicMail*➡■**



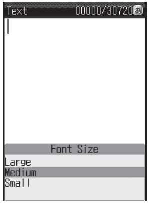
Graphic Mail Window

- To decorate text using a Graphic Mail template:
  Press ✉➡***Templates***➡■➡***Phone Memory*** or ***Memory Card***➡■➡ Select a template➡■➡***YES***➡■➡ Edit text➡■

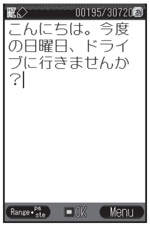
4

Messaging

3 Select *Font Size* ➡ ■



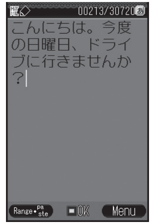
4 Select a font size ➡ ■ ➡ Enter text



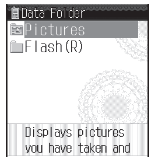
5 Press Y! ➡ *GraphicMail* ➡ ■ ➡ *ScreenColor* ➡ ■



6 Select a background color ➡ ■



7 Press Y! ➡ *GraphicMail* ➡ ■ ➡ *Picture* ➡ ■ ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ■

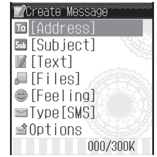


8 Select a folder ➡ ■ ➡ Select an image ➡ ■

Sending SMS

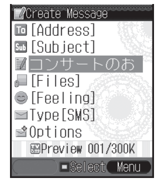
Send short text messages to other SoftBank handsets using phone numbers as address.

1 Press ✉ ➡ *Create New* ➡ ■



Create Message Window

2 Select *Text* ➡ ■ ➡ Enter text ➡ ■



3 Select *Address* ➡ ■



Set Address Window

4 **Select *Phone Number*➡■➡Enter a phone number➡■**



- To select a number from Phone Book: Select ***Phone Book***➡■➡Select an entry➡■➡Select a phone number ➡■
- You can select from the three most recently sent addresses in Set Address Window.

5 **Press (Send)➡*OK*➡■**

- If you select ***Notify Only Once*** in the sending confirmation/completed window, the window will not appear from the next time.

More Features

Creating Messages

(▶ page 4-13)

Attaching Files

(▶ page 4-14)

Graphic Mail Functions

(▶ page 4-15)

Outgoing Message Functions

(▶ page 4-15)

Message Creation Settings

(▶ page 13-14)

- Add Recipients to Simple Input List
- Set Groups
- Set a Signature
- Set Default Mail Type
- Show/Hide Notification When Mail Type is Switched

Outgoing Messages

(▶ page 13-15)

- Show/Hide Sending Confirmation Window
- Set Vibration When Sending is Confirmed
- Check Delivery
- Set Server Storage Period of Sent Messages
- Set Message Priority
- Set Time for Delivering Messages to Recipients
- Save a Reply Address
- Edit SMS Center Number (+819066519300)

Opening New Messages

When a message arrives, ringtone sounds and animation plays. Incoming messages are saved to ***Received***.

Check any unread messages from Information Prompt.

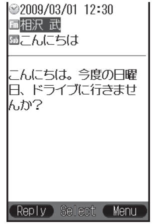
- By default, S! Mail retrieval is set to ***Immediate***. The complete incoming message and attachments are automatically downloaded. Change settings to ***Phone # Only*** (auto-download messages from SoftBank handsets) or ***Deferred*** (select messages to download) (page 13-16).
- When you have several unread Feeling Mail, the corresponding graphics of the most recent sender appears in Information Prompt background.

1 Information Prompt appears



2 Select *New Messages* ➡ ■

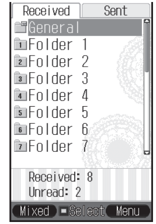
3 Select a folder ➡ ■ ➡ Select a message ➡ ■



- To retrieve new messages from the server: Press ✉ ➡ ***Retrieve New*** ➡ ■
- If Priority is set to ***Pause***, incoming messages are notified by a confirmation window during handset use (except in Standby). Select ***Read Now*** or ***Later***. To delete a message without reading it, select ***Delete***.
- While watching TV, if a confirmation window appears to notify of an incoming message, select ***Read Now*** or ***Later***. When ***Later*** is selected, handset receives the message after ending TV.

Checking Received Messages

1 Press ✉ ➡ *Message Box* ➡ ■ ➡ *Received*



2 Select a folder ➡ ■ ➡ Select a message ➡ ■

- It may be impossible to open/play a file unless you obtain a content key (content license) depending on the file.

Replying to Messages

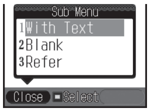
Create Message Window opens and the recipient's address is automatically set.

- When replying to an S! Mail, the subject to which ***Re:*** is prefixed is automatically inserted in the subject field.

Example: Replying by quoting the received text

1 **Press** ✉ ➡ ***Message Box*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Received***

2 **Select a folder** ➡ ■ ➡ **Select a message** ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ **(Reply)**



3 **Select *With Text*** ➡ ■



- To reply to the sender of a message with multiple addresses, select ***To Sender*** or ***To All***.
- To reply by creating new text, select ***Blank***; to reply by referring to the received text, select ***Refer***.

More Features

Receiving Messages

(▶ page 4-16)

Server Operations

(▶ page 4-16)

Display Settings

(▶ page 13-15)

- Set Font Size
- Set Scroll Unit
- Show/Hide Address and Subject When Sending/Receiving Messages

Incoming Messages

(▶ page 13-16)

- Set New Message Retrieve Mode
- Set Automatic Display of Picture Files
- Set Automatic Playback of Sound Files
- Set Spam Filter

3D Pictograms

(▶ page 13-16)

- Set Automatic Playback of 3D Pictograms
- Set Font and Background Colors for 3D Pictograms

3D Mail

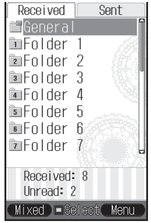
(▶ page 13-17)

- Set Playback of 3D Mail

Received and sent messages are saved to the ***Received*** and ***Sent*** message folders respectively. Unsent draft messages are saved to ***Drafts***, and undelivered (delivery failed) messages are saved to ***Unsent***.

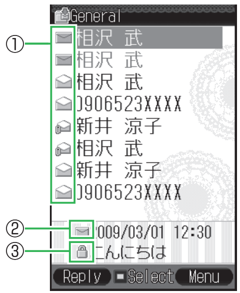
- **About Auto-delete**
  If Message Box memory is full, the oldest message is deleted when receiving/sending a new message. Set Protect (page 4-17) to save important messages. Alternatively, set Auto-delete (page 13-17) to ***Do not Set***. However, when memory is full, a warning and [icon] appear on Display. Delete unnecessary messages to receive new messages (page 4-18).
- When unable to receive S! Mail notifications due to insufficient memory, delete unnecessary messages. Once memory space becomes available, S! Mail notifications are redelivered by Retry function. Alternatively, retrieve Mail List (page 4-16) to receive notifications. For details on redelivery of S! Mail notifications, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-48).

1 **Press** [key] ➡ ***Message Box*** ➡ [■]



Message Box Window

2 **Select *Received* or *Sent* ➡ Select a folder ➡ [■]**



Message List Window

①Message Status

	Unread Message
	Read Message
	Unread Message with Attachments
	Replied Unread Message
	Forwarded Unread Message
	Replied & Forwarded Unread Message
	Unread S! Mail Notification
	Read S! Mail Notification
	Replied Unread S! Mail Notification
	Forwarded Unread S! Mail Notification
	Replied & Forwarded S! Mail Notification
	Sent Message with Unread Delivery Report
	Sent Message with Delivery Being Confirmed
	Sent Message without Delivery Confirmed
	Forwarded Sent Message without Delivery Confirmed
	Sent Message of Which Delivery to Some Recipients is Failed
	Forwarded Sent Message of Which Delivery to Some Recipients is Failed
	Unsent Message with Delivery Failed
	Unsent Message Waiting for Delivery
	Message Being Sent
	Draft Message

②S! Mail/SMS

	S! Mail
	SMS
	SMS on USIM Card

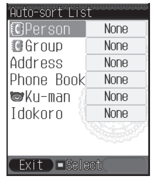
③Priority/Protection

	High/Protected
	High/Not Protected
	Normal/Protected
	Low/Protected
	Low/Not Protected

Sorting Messages

Sort messages into folders by criterion.

1 **Open Message Box➡Select a folder➡ [Y!]➡*Sort Setting*➡[■]**



2 **Select a criterion➡[■]➡Specify conditions➡[■]**

- Select ***Person*** to set an individual entry in Phone Book as the sorting condition.
- Select ***Group*** to set a Group entry in Phone Book as the sorting condition.
- Select ***Address*** to set the specified addresses, regardless of whether they are saved to Phone Book, as the sorting condition.
- Select ***Phone Book*** to set those addresses that are either saved or not saved to Phone Book as the sorting condition.
- Select ***Ku-man*** to set messages from Ku-man as the sorting condition.
- Select ***Idokoro*** to set Departure Mail, Arrival Mail, and Simple Notice as the sorting condition.

4

Messaging

More Features

Organizing Messages
(▶ page 4-17)

Using Messages
(▶ page 4-18)

Message Box Settings
(▶ page 13-17)

- Disable Auto-delete
- Switch Between Folder View and All Message View
- Switch Between Mixed View and Separate View

Message List View Settings
(▶ page 13-17)

- Switch Message List Views
- Split Message List Window

Message List Window Settings
(▶ page 13-18)

- Filter Messages
- Create a New Phone Book Entry with a Phone Number/E-mail Address
- Add a Phone Number/E-mail Address to a Phone Book Entry
- Switch Between Unread and Read
- Switch All Messages in a Folder Between Unread and Read

Mini Tool Setting in Message List Window
(▶ page 13-18)

- Set Mini Tool in Message List Window

Sending Messages

Creating Messages

From ➡ Create Message Window page 4-4
Set Address Window page 4-4

Specify Recipients Quickly [Simple Input]

- Save addresses to Simple Input list (page 13-14) for quick access.

Set Address Window ***Simple Input*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select an entry ➡ ■

Send a Message from Sent Log/Received Log [Sent Log/Received Log]

Set Address Window ***Sent Log*** or ***Received Log*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select an entry ➡ ■

Send a Message to a Group [Group]

- You can select addresses saved to a group (page 13-14).

Set Address Window ***Group*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select a group ➡ ■

Insert Your Name and Other Information Automatically [Insert]

Create Message Window ***Text*** ➡ ■ ➡ Y! ➡ ***Insert*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Phone Book***, ***My Details***, ***Phrases***, ***Emoticon***, ***Signature***, ***Notepad***, ***Message Box*** or ***URL History*** ➡ ■ ➡ Do the respective operations

Add Recipients [Add Address]

Create Message Window Select the address field ➡ Y! ➡ ***Add Address*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select an address ➡ ■ ➡ ✉

- For details on how to enter addresses, see page 4-4.

Delete Recipients [Delete/Select Multi/Delete All]

■**Deleting One Entry**

Create Message Window Select the address field ➡ ■ ➡ Select an address ➡ Y! ➡ ***Delete*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***One*** ➡ ■

■**Deleting Multiple Entries**

Create Message Window Select the address field ➡ ■ ➡ Y! ➡ ***Delete*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Select Multi*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select addresses ➡ ■ ➡ ✉

■**Deleting All Entries**

Create Message Window Select the address field ➡ Y! ➡ ***Delete All*** ➡ ■

Save a Recipient's Address to Phone Book [To Phone Book]

Create Message Window Select the address field ➡ ■ ➡ Select an address ➡ Y! ➡ ***Save Sender*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Add New*** or ***Add*** ➡ ■

- See "Creating New Entries" (page 2-17) for entering other items.

Set To/Cc/Bcc [To/Cc/Bcc]

Create Message Window Select the address field ➡ ■ ➡ Select an address ➡ Y! ➡ ***To/Cc/Bcc*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***To***, ***Cc*** or ***Bcc*** ➡ ■ ➡ ✉

- To: The recipient's address.
- Cc: Copies of a message sent to the address in the ***To*** field are sent to other addresses. Addresses entered in the ***Cc*** (carbon copy) field are revealed to other recipients.
- Bcc: Addresses entered in the ***Bcc*** (blind carbon copy) field are not revealed to other recipients.

Save All Addresses to a Group
[To Group]

Create Message Window Select the address field➡ ✉➡*To Group*➡■ (twice)➡Select a group➡■➡Enter a group name➡■

Edit Text
[Edit Text]

Create Message Window Select the text➡■➡Edit the text➡■

Delete Text
[Clear Text]

Create Message Window Select the text➡✉➡*Clear Field*➡■

Change Mail Type
[Mail Type]

■**Switching to SMS**

Create Message Window *Type*➡■➡*SMS*➡■

- If a message contains something that cannot be sent by SMS, a confirmation window appears. The contents which cannot be sent will be deleted if you select *Change*.
- If the text exceeds the maximum number of characters allowed in SMS, a confirmation window appears. If you select *Cut to Fit SMS* after selecting *Change*, the maximum amount of text from the beginning is remained and the excess is deleted.
- If you change the mail type to SMS, the following items are deleted.
  E-mail address, Cc and Bcc setting, Subject, Attached file, Graphic Mail template and settings, Feeling Mail setting

■**Switching to S! Mail**

Create Message Window *Type*➡■➡*S! Mail*➡■

- By performing the following operations, you can also change the mail type from SMS to S! Mail automatically. If these items are deleted, the mail type returns to SMS automatically.
  Add an e-mail address, Set Cc/Bcc, Enter subject, Attach a file, Set Feeling Mail
- If you press ✉ and select *Templates* or *GraphicMail* while entering text, or if you enter text that exceeds the maximum number of characters allowed in SMS and press ■, a confirmation window telling the message cannot be sent as SMS appears. Select *Change to S!Mail*, *Cut to Fit SMS*, or *Edit Message*.

Attaching Files

From ➡ Create Message Window page 4-4
Attachments Menu page 4-4

Shoot Picture or Video Attachments
[Take Picture/Record Video]

■**Picture**

Attachments Menu *Take Picture*➡■➡Frame subject in Display➡■(twice)

■**Video**

Attachments Menu *Record Video*➡■➡Frame subject in Display➡■(three times)

Set an Attachment to Open Automatically (Recipient's Handset)
[Auto Play]

- If there are more than one attached file, you can set just one to play back.

Create Message Window *Attachments*➡■➡Select an attached file➡✉➡*Auto Play*➡■➡*ON/OFF*➡■➡*ON*➡■➡*Display* or *Do not Display*➡■

- To put a caption to the attached file, select *Display* and enter a caption for the file.

Graphic Mail Functions

From ➡ Create Message Window page 4-4
Graphic Mail Window page 4-5

Other Decorations [Graphic Mail]

■Changing Font Color

Graphic Mail Window *Font Color* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a color ➡ ■ ➡ Enter text

■Blinking/Scrolling/Swinging Text

Graphic Mail Window *Blink*, *Telop* or *Swing* ➡ ■ ➡ Enter text

■Aligning Text

Graphic Mail Window *LineUp* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a character position ➡ ■ ➡ Enter text

■Inserting a Line in Text

Graphic Mail Window *Partition* ➡ ■

■Inserting Sound

Graphic Mail Window *Sound* ➡ ■ ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a sound file ➡ ■

■Inserting My Pictograms

Graphic Mail Window *MyPictograms* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a My Pictogram ➡ ■

■Deleting One Decoration

Graphic Mail Window *Cancel* ➡ ■ ➡ *Delete by Each* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a decoration ➡ ■ ➡ [mail key]

■Deleting All Decorations

Graphic Mail Window *Cancel* ➡ ■ ➡ *Delete All* ➡ ■ ➡ *YES* ➡ ■

Change Decorations [Change/Delete Graphic Mail Settings]

Create Message Window Select text ➡ ■ ➡ Enter text ➡ [mail key] ➡ *Start* ➡ ■ ➡ Select the end ➡ ■ ➡ *Graphic Mail* ➡ ■ ➡ Set/delete decorations

Insert a Graphic Mail Template [Switch Templates]

Create Message Window Select text ➡ [menu key] ➡ *Switch Templ.* ➡ ■ ➡ *Switch* ➡ ■ ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a template ➡ ■ ➡ Edit text ➡ ■

Save Graphic Mail Templates [Save Template]

Create Message Window Select text ➡ [menu key] ➡ *Save Template* ➡ ■ ➡ Enter a title ➡ ■ ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ■

- Templates can only be saved when the text has been decorated with Graphic Mail settings.

Outgoing Message Functions

Save without Sending [Save to Drafts]

Create Message Window [menu key] ➡ *To Drafts* ➡ ■ ➡ *Save* ➡ ■

Check Preview [Preview]

Create Message Window [TV key] or [menu key] ➡ *Preview* ➡ ■

Specify Server Storage Period [Expiry Time]

Create Message Window *Options* ➡ ■ ➡ *Expiry* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an expiry time ➡ ■

Check Delivery [Delivery Check]

Create Message Window *Options* ➡ ■ ➡ *DeliveryCheck* ➡ ■ ➡ *ON* ➡ ■

Specify Message Delivery Time [Delivery Time]

Create Message Window *Options* ➡ ■ ➡ *Delivery Time* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a delivery time ➡ ■

- This procedure is only available with S! Mail.

Set Message Priority [Priority]

Create Message Window ***Options***➡[■]➡***Priority***➡[■]➡Select a priority➡[■]

- This procedure is only available with S! Mail.

Activate Reply to Function [Reply to]

Create Message Window ***Options***➡[■]➡***Reply to***➡[■]➡***Activate***➡[■]

- Save a Reply address in advance (page 13-15).
- This procedure is only available with S! Mail.

Delete a Sent Message Checked on the Recipient's Side Automatically [Self-delete]

Create Message Window ***Options***➡[■]➡***Self-delete***➡[■]➡***ON***➡[■]

- This procedure is only available with S! Mail.

Incoming Messages

Receiving Messages

Manually Retrieve Complete S! Mail [Retrieve Mail]

Select S! Mail notification➡[■]➡***Retrieve Mail***➡[■]

Forward Continuation of S! Mail [Forward Mail]

Select S! Mail notification➡[Y!]➡***Divert***➡[■]➡***Server Mail***➡[■]➡***Keep*** or ***Do not Keep***➡[■]➡Enter an address➡[✉]

- For details on how to enter addresses, see page 4-4.

Server Operations

Use Mail List [Update Mail List/Retrieve Mail]

[✉]➡***Server Mail***➡[■]

■**Retrieving and Updating Mail List**

[✉]➡***Update***➡[■]

■**Receiving Messages on Mail List**

Select a message➡[Y!]➡***Retrieve***➡[■]➡***One***, ***Select Multi*** or ***All***➡[■]

- When you select ***Select Multi***, do the following.
  Select messages➡[■]➡[✉]

Forward Server Messages [Forward Server Mail]

[✉]➡***Server Mail***➡[■]➡Select a message➡[Y!]➡***Divert***➡[■]➡***Keep*** or ***Do not Keep***➡[■]➡Enter an address➡[✉]

- When ***Do not Keep*** is selected, the forwarded message is deleted from the server.
- When handset is out of range or in Offline Mode, server messages cannot be forwarded.
- For details on how to enter addresses, see page 4-4.

Delete Server Messages [Delete/Select Multi/Delete All]

[✉]➡***Server Mail***➡[■]

■**Deleting One Message**

Select a message➡[Y!]➡***Delete***➡[■]➡***One***➡[■]➡***Server Mail*** or ***Notif./Server***➡[■]➡***YES***➡[■]

■Deleting Multiple Messages

[key] ➡ ***Delete*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***Select Multi*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***Server Mail*** or ***Notif./Server*** ➡ [■] ➡ Select messages ➡ [■] ➡ [key] ➡ ***YES*** ➡ [■]

■Deleting All Messages

[key] ➡ ***Delete*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***All Read Mail*** or ***All*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***Server Mail*** or ***Notif./Server*** ➡ [■] ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ***YES*** ➡ [■]

Check Server Status [Mailbox Volume]

[key] ➡ ***Server Mail*** ➡ [■] ➡ [key] ➡ ***Mailbox Vol.*** ➡ [■]

- To update the amount of server space, press [key] (Update).
- If the server usage exceeds 80%, a warning window appears. Retrieve messages stored on the server (page 4-16) or delete them (page 4-16).

Organizing/Using Messages

From ➡ Message Box Window page 4-10
Message List Window page 4-10

Organizing Messages

Set Security to Message Box [Security Lock]

[key] ➡ ***Message Box*** ➡ [key] ➡ ***Security Lock*** ➡ [■] ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ***Lock*** ➡ [■]

- To view messages, do the following.
  [key] ➡ ***Message Box*** ➡ [■] ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ Select a folder ➡ [■] ➡ Select a message ➡ [■]

Set Folder Security [Security Lock]

- Set to require Handset Code entry to view messages in the selected folder. However, folder security cannot be set to ***General*** folder.

Message Box Window Select a folder ➡ [key] ➡ ***Security Lock*** ➡ [■] ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ***Lock*** ➡ [■]

Edit a Folder Name [Rename Folder]

Message Box Window Select a folder ➡ [key] ➡ ***Rename Folder*** ➡ [■] ➡ Enter a folder name ➡ [■]

Protect Messages [Protect/Select Multi/Protect All]

■Protecting One Message

Message List Window Select a message ➡ [key] ➡ ***Protect*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***One*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***Protect*** ➡ [■]

■Protecting Multiple Messages

Message List Window [key] ➡ ***Protect*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***Select Multi*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***Protect*** ➡ [■] ➡ Select messages ➡ [■] ➡ [key]

■Protecting All Messages

Message List Window [key] ➡ ***Protect*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***All*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***Protect*** ➡ [■] (twice)

Delete Messages [Delete/Select Multi/All in Folder/Delete All]

■Deleting One Message

Message List Window Select a message➡ ➡ *Delete*➡ ➡ *One*➡ ➡ *YES*➡

■Deleting Multiple Messages

Message List Window ➡ *Delete*➡ ➡ *Select Multi*➡ ➡ Select messages➡ ➡ ➡ *YES*➡

■Deleting All Messages in a Folder

Message Box Window ➡ *Delete*➡ ➡ *All in Folder*➡ ➡ Enter Handset Code➡ *YES*➡

■Deleting All Received/Sent Messages

Message Box Window ➡ *Delete*➡ ➡ *All*➡ ➡ Enter Handset Code➡ *YES*➡

Using Messages

Forward Messages [Forward Mail]

- When forwarding an S! Mail, the subject to which ***Fw:*** is prefixed is automatically inserted in the subject field.

Message List Window Select a message➡ ➡ *Divert*➡ ➡ Enter an address➡

- For details on how to enter addresses, see page 4-4.

Call Sender/Recipient [Call Sender/Call Address]

Message List Window Select a message➡ ➡ *Call Sender* or *Call Address*➡ ➡

Check Delivery Report [Check Delivery Report]

Message List Window Select a message that has the delivery check icon ➡

Use Links [Call/Create Message/Save Sender/Start Navi Appli/Access URL]

Message List Window Open a message that has a link➡ Select a link➡

- Available links are shown in blue.

■Calling a Phone Number

Voice Call➡ ➡

■Making a Video Call to a Phone Number

Voice Call➡ ➡ ➡ *Video Call*➡

■Making an S! Circle Talk Call to a Phone Number

Voice Call➡ ➡ ➡ *Circle Talk*➡ ➡

■Sending a Message to a Phone Number/E-mail Address

Create Mail➡ ➡ *Create*➡ ➡ Create Message Window opens

- For how to send messages, see pages 4-4 and 4-6.

■Saving a Phone Number/E-mail Address to Phone Book

Save Sender➡ ➡ *Add New* or *Add*➡ ➡ Phone Book Entry Window opens

- See "Creating New Entries" (page 2-17) for entering other items.

■Starting Navi Appli from Location Information

Navi Appli➡ ➡ *Launch*➡

■Saving Location Information to My Locations

To Locations ➡ [■]

- See "Save Location Information to My Locations" (page 9-31) for following operations.

■Accessing the Internet

By Yahoo! Keitai or *By PC Browser* ➡ [■]

Save Attached Files [Save Attachments]

Message List Window Open a message that has an attachment➡Select a file➡[■]➡*Save*➡[■]➡Enter a file name➡[■]➡*Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*➡[■]➡Select a folder➡[■]

- Some files cannot be saved depending on the file type.
- To open/play an attached file, select a file and select *View* or *Play*. Some files may not be shown/played properly on handset.
- When a received message has more than 20 attached files, all files after the 20th file cannot be opened/played.

Edit and Send Unsent Messages [Edit Unsent Messages]

[シンプル]➡*Unsent*➡[■]➡Select a message➡[■]➡Select an item➡[■]➡Edit the item➡[■]➡[シンプル]➡*OK*➡[■]

- Press [シンプル] (OK) after editing the address.

Change Order of Messages [Sort by]

Message List Window [Y!]➡*Sort by*➡[■]➡Select a criterion➡[■]

Copy Text [Text Copy]

Message List Window Open a message➡[Y!]➡*Text Copy*➡[■]➡Move cursor to one end of the text range to copy➡[■]➡Specify the range➡[■]

Move SMS Messages to USIM Card or Handset [Move]

Message List Window Open a message➡[Y!]➡*Move*➡[■]➡*To Folder*, *To Phone* or *To USIM*➡[■]

Check Message Details [View Details]

Message List Window Open a message➡[Y!]➡*View*➡[■]➡*View Details*➡[■]

Move Messages to a Different Folder [Move Folder]

■Moving One Message

Message List Window Select a message➡[Y!]➡*Move Folder*➡[■]➡*One*➡[■]➡Select a destination folder➡[■]

■Moving Multiple Messages

Message List Window [Y!]➡*Move Folder*➡[■]➡*Select Multi*➡[■]➡Select messages➡[■]➡[シンプル]➡Select a destination folder➡[■]

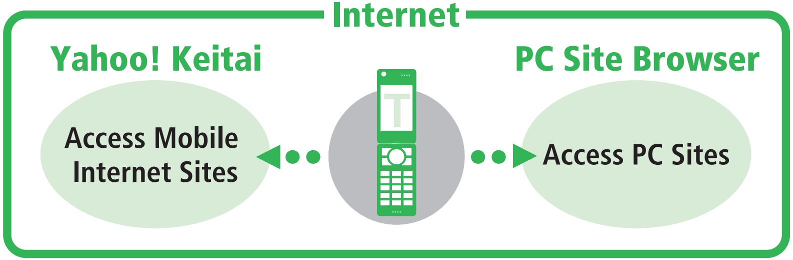
■Moving All Messages in a Folder

Message List Window [Y!]➡*Move Folder*➡[■]➡*All*➡[■]➡Select a destination folder➡[■]

5 Internet

About the Internet

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai (SoftBank's mobile portal site). Also browse the Internet using PC Site Browser.



- **About Security**
  Handset uses SSL/TLS (a protocol for sending encrypted data) to protect against dangers on the Internet such as eavesdropping, tampering and spoofing. Root certificates necessary for SSL/TLS are saved on handset.
- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of SSL/TLS usage.
- SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd. and Secom Trust Systems Co., Ltd. cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL/TLS.
- In a 3G HighSpeed area, you can receive at a maximum speed of 3.6 Mbps and send at a maximum speed of 384 kbps. Note that downloading large files may result in high connection fees.

More Features

Security Settings

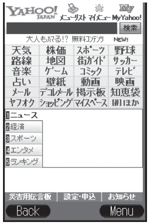
(▶ page 13-19)

- Send/Block Manufacture Number
- Configure Send Referer Setting
- Enable/Disable Cookies
- Configure Script Settings
- Check Root Certificates
- Set Authentication
- Set SSL Communication

Accessing Yahoo! Keitai

1 **Press** [Y!]

- To disconnect during communication, press [Y!] (Cancel).



Web Page

2 **Select an item ➡ [■]**

3 **To stop viewing the web page, press [クリア/メモ]/[POWER] ➡ *YES* ➡ [■]**

Accessing Web Pages from History

1 **Press [■] ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ [■] ➡ *History* ➡ [■]**



History Menu

2 **Select a title ➡ [■]**

Accessing Web Pages by Entering URLs

1 **Press [■] ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ [■] ➡ *Enter URL* ➡ [■]**



URL Window

2 **Select *Direct Entry* ➡ [■] ➡ Enter a URL ➡ [■] (twice)**

More Features

Connecting/Browsing

(► page 5-7)

Universal Settings for Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser

(► page 13-20)

- Clear Cache
- Delete All Cookies
- Clear Authentication Info
- Return Browser Settings, Bookmarks, and Screen Memo to Default
- Restore Settings and Stored Information to Default

Yahoo! Keitai Settings

(► page 13-20)

- Set Storage Location of Downloaded Contents

Accessing PC Sites

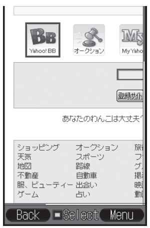
1 Press ■ ➡ ***Yahoo! Keitai*** ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ (💻)



PC Browser Menu

2 Select ***Homepage*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Always Ask*** or ***Ask Once Only*** ➡ ■

- If you select ***Ask Once Only***, the confirmation window about display and connection fees will not appear from the next time.



Web Page

Accessing Web Pages from History

1 From PC Browser Menu, select ***History*** ➡ ■



History Menu

2 Select a title ➡ ■ ➡ ***Always Ask*** or ***Ask Once Only*** ➡ ■

Accessing Web Pages by Entering URLs

1 From PC Browser Menu, select ***Enter URL*** ➡ ■



URL Window

2 Select ***Direct Entry*** ➡ ■ ➡ Enter a URL ➡ ■ (twice) ➡ ***Always Ask*** or ***Ask Once Only*** ➡ ■

- Some websites may not be shown correctly or it may take time to open depending on the site.

More Features

Connecting/Browsing
(▶ page 5-7)

PC Site Browser
(▶ page 5-7)

Universal Settings for Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser
(▶ page 13-20)

- Clear Cache
- Delete All Cookies
- Clear Authentication Info
- Return Browser Settings, Bookmarks, and Screen Memo to Default
- Restore Settings and Stored Information to Default

PC Site Browser Settings
(▶ page 13-20)

- Do Not Show Alert When Switching Browsers

Web Page Operations

Scrolling Pages

When the full page does not fit on browser, a scroll bar appears on bottom or right side of browser. Use / to scroll the page.

Moving Cursor

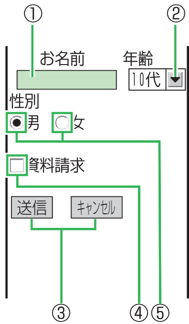
To select items, use / to move cursor.

Going to Previous Page/Next Page

Websites you have retrieved are temporarily stored. Press (Back) to return to the previous page. Press and select ***Forward*** to go to the next page.

Text Entry & Item Selection

When there are entry fields and selectable items on the screen, operate as follows.



①Text Entry Field
Select and press . A text entry window opens. Enter text and press .

②Menu List
Select and press to open menu list. Select an item and press .

③Command Button
Select and press to execute the indicated command.

④Checkbox
Select and press . The checkbox changes to , indicating that the item is selected.

⑤Radio Button
Select one from a range of items. Select and press . The radio button changes to , indicating that the item is selected.

- The above screenshot is an example image.

More Features

Using Web Pages
(► page 5-7)

Web Page Settings
(► page 13-21)

- Change Font Size
- Change Scroll Unit
- Change Text Encoding Type
- Adjust Sound Playback Volume
- Do Not Download Images and Melodies from Web Pages
- Set Security Lock

Bookmarks

If you bookmark frequently accessed pages, you will be able to access them quickly and easily.

Saving a Bookmark

1 **Open a page ➡ [Y!] ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ [■]**

2 **Select *Save* ➡ [■]**

- If you are not editing the title or URL, press [■] (Save).

3 **Press [シンプル] (Edit) ➡ Select the title field ➡ [■] ➡ Edit the title ➡ [■]**



4 **Press [シンプル] (OK) ➡ [■]**

- Select a folder when adding the bookmark to one of folders you created.

Using Bookmarks

1 **Press [■] ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ [■] ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ [■]**

- To access a web page from a PC site bookmark:
  Press [■] ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ [■] ➡ [シンプル] (PC) ➡ *Bookmarks* ➡ [■]



Bookmarks List Menu

2 **Select a title ➡ [■]**

Screen Memo

If you save frequently accessed information (pages) to Screen Memo, the information can be viewed without accessing the Internet later.

Saving Pages

1 **Open a page ➡ [Y!] ➡ *Screen Memo* ➡ [■]**

2 **Select *Save* ➡ [■] ➡ Enter a title ➡ [■]**

- Some pages may not be saved because of copyright restrictions, etc.
- If you save a page with the same URL as a page already saved in Screen Memo, it is saved as a different page.

Viewing Saved Pages

1 **Press [■] ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ [■] ➡ *Screen Memo* ➡ [■]**

- To view saved pages of PC sites:
  Press [■] ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ [■] ➡ [シンプル] (PC) ➡ *Screen Memo* ➡ [■]



Screen Memo List Menu

2 **Select a title ➡ [■]**

More Features

Bookmarks and Screen Memo
(▶ page 5-9)

5
Internet

Internet

From ➡ History Menu page 5-3, 5-4
URL Window page 5-3, 5-4
Web Page page 5-3, 5-4

Connecting/Browsing

Delete Records from History [Delete/Select Multi/Delete All]

■Deleting One Record

History Menu Select a record➡ ➡*Delete*➡ ■ ➡*One*➡ ■ ➡*YES*➡ ■

■Deleting Multiple Records

History Menu ➡*Delete*➡ ■ ➡*Select Multi* ➡ ■ ➡Select records➡ ■ ➡ ➡*YES*➡ ■

■Deleting All Records

History Menu ➡*Delete*➡ ■ ➡*All*➡ ■ ➡ Enter Handset Code➡*YES*➡ ■

Use Once Entered URLs [URL History]

URL Window *URL History*➡ ■ ➡Select a record➡ ■ (twice)

Switch Browsers

Web Page ➡*Change View*➡ ■ ➡*Current Page* or *Linked Page*➡ ■ ➡*Always Ask* or *Ask Once Only*➡ ■

- If you select *Ask Once Only*, the confirmation window will not appear from the next time.

PC Site Browser

From ➡ Web Page page 5-4

Switch Screens [PC Screen/Small Screen]

Web Page ➡*Tool*➡ ■ ➡*PC Screen* or *Small Screen*➡ ■

Enlarge/Reduce a Page [Zoom]

Web Page ➡*Tool*➡ ■ ➡*Zoom*➡ ■ ➡ Select a magnification/shrinkage percentage ➡ ■

View Pages in Landscape or Portrait [Landscape/Portrait]

Web Page ➡*Tool*➡ ■ ➡*Landscape* or *Portrait*➡ ■

Using Web Pages

Refresh [Reload Page]

Web Page ➡*Reload Page*➡ ■

Copy Text [Text Copy]

Web Page ➡*Text Copy*➡ ■ ➡Move cursor to one end of the text range to copy➡ ■ ➡ Specify the range➡ ■

- Only characters and pictographs can be copied.

Send a URL Link via Mail [Send URL]

Web Page ➡*Tool*➡ ■ ➡*Send URL*➡ ■

Search Text in Web Pages [Page Search]

Web Page ➡*Tool*➡ ■ ➡*Page Search*➡ ■ ➡Enter text➡ ■ ➡Select a search method ➡ ■ ➡*Up* or *Down*, or *ON* or *OFF*➡ ■ ➡

Use Files [File Playback/Save File/File Details]

Open a page that has a file ➡ Y! ➡ *Saving Mode* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a file ➡ ■

■Playing/Opening a File

Play/View ➡ ■

- Some files may not be played/shown properly on handset.

■Saving a File

Save ➡ ■ ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a folder ➡ ■

- Some files may not be saved because of copyright restrictions, etc.

■File Properties

File Details ➡ ■

Use Files from Links in Web Pages [File Playback/Save File/File Details/ Set Ringtone/Set Wallpaper]

Open a page that has a file ➡ Select a link ➡ ■

■Playing/Opening a File

Play/View ➡ ■

- Some files may not be played/shown properly on handset.

■Saving a File

Save ➡ ■

- See page 4-19 for how to save files.
- Some files may not be saved because of copyright restrictions, etc.

■File Properties

File Details ➡ ■

■Saving and Setting a File as Ringtone

Set Ringtone ➡ ■ ➡ Select a type of incoming event ➡ ■ (twice)

■Saving and Setting a File as Wallpaper

Set Wallpaper ➡ Select a folder ➡ ■

Use Text in Web Pages [Use Phone Number/E-mail Address/URL]

- Only underlined items are available.

■Making a Call/Adding to Phone Book

Web Page Select a link ➡ ■ ➡ *Call* or *To Phone Book* ➡ ■

■Sending a Message/Adding to Phone Book

Web Page Select a link ➡ ■ ➡ *As Mail* or *To Phone Book* ➡ ■

■Accessing a Website

Web Page Select a link ➡ ■

Save a Page to Event [To Event]

Web Page Y! ➡ *Tool* ➡ ■ ➡ *To Event* ➡ ■ ➡ Save the event (page 9-4)

Save a Page to My Locations [To Locations]

Web Page Y! ➡ *Tool* ➡ ■ ➡ *To Locations* ➡ ■ ➡ Save the location information (page 9-31)

View Page Properties [Page Details]

Web Page Y! ➡ *Tool* ➡ ■ ➡ *Details* ➡ ■ ➡ *Page Details* ➡ ■

Check Server Certificate for a Page [Session Info.]

Web Page Y! ➡ *Tool* ➡ ■ ➡ *Details* ➡ ■ ➡ *Session Info.* ➡ ■

Jump to Top or End of a Page [Jump]

Web Page Y! ➡ *Tool* ➡ ■ ➡ *Jump* ➡ ■ ➡ *To Top* or *To End* ➡ ■

Search for a Page by Keyword [Web Search]

Web Page ✉ ➡ ***Tool*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Web Search*** ➡ ■ ➡ Enter a keyword ➡ ■ (twice)

View a Frame in Whole Screen [Frame In]

Web Page Select a frame ➡ ✉ ➡ ***Tool*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Frame In*** ➡ ■

■Returning to All-Frames Screen

✉ ➡ ***Tool*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Frame Out*** ➡ ■

Bookmarks and Screen Memo

From ➡ Bookmarks List Menu page 5-6
Screen Memo List Menu page 5-6

Delete Bookmarks/Saved Pages [Delete/Select Multi/Delete All]

■Deleting One Entry

Bookmarks List Menu / Screen Memo List Menu Select a title ➡ ✉ ➡ ***Delete*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***One*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***YES*** ➡ ■

■Deleting Multiple Entries

Bookmarks List Menu / Screen Memo List Menu ✉ ➡ ***Delete*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Select Multi*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select titles ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ ➡ ***YES*** ➡ ■

■Deleting All Entries

Bookmarks List Menu / Screen Memo List Menu ✉ ➡ ***Delete*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***All*** ➡ ■ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ***YES*** ➡ ■

Change Titles [Edit Title]

■Changing a Bookmark Title

Bookmarks List Menu Select a bookmark ➡ ✉ ➡ ***Edit*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select the title field ➡ ■ ➡ Edit the title ➡ ■ ➡ ✉

■Changing Title of a Saved Page

Screen Memo List Menu Select a saved page ➡ ✉ ➡ ***Rename*** ➡ ■ ➡ Edit the title ➡ ■

Create a Folder to Organize Bookmarks [Create Folder]

Bookmarks List Menu ✉ ➡ ***Create Folder*** ➡ ■ ➡ Enter a folder name ➡ ■

Move Bookmarks to a Specified Folder [Move/Select Multi/Move All]

■Moving One Bookmark

Bookmarks List Menu Select a bookmark ➡ ✉ ➡ ***Move*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***One*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select a folder ➡ ■

■Moving Multiple Bookmarks

Bookmarks List Menu ✉ ➡ ***Move*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Select Multi*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select bookmarks ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ ➡ Select a folder ➡ ■

■Moving All Bookmarks

Bookmarks List Menu ✉ ➡ ***Move*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***All*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select a folder ➡ ■

Send a Bookmark via Mail [As Mail]

Bookmarks List Menu Select a bookmark ➡ ✉ ➡ ***As Mail*** ➡ ■

6 TV

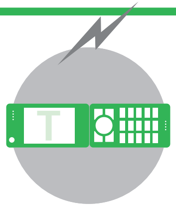
About TV

Handset supports One Seg Digital TV for cellular phones and information terminals.
For more information on One Seg services, visit the Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting Website:
http://www.dpa.or.jp (PC)
http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/ (Mobile Site) (Japanese)

- Digital TV supports reception in Japan only. Other countries use different broadcast systems and frequencies, and so Digital TV reception is not possible outside of Japan.

One Seg

One Seg is a digital TV broadcasting service for mobile devices. It uses one segment of the terrestrial digital band to allow you to watch TV and data broadcasts you enjoy at home on your handset.



Enjoy watching TV in widescreen.

Data Broadcasts

Enjoy data broadcasts along with watching programs. You can access related information and even participate in programs.

View Timer

Use the timer to book programs you want to view. Use Program Guide to set the timer.

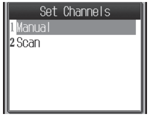
Precautions

- Never use TV while riding a bicycle/motorcycle, or while driving. Doing so may compromise hearing or distract attention from the road, causing risk of accident. Even while walking, pay attention to the traffic around you when using TV. Be especially careful in the vicinity of railway crossings and pedestrian crosswalks.
- TV image and audio may be affected if messages are received while you are using TV.
- SoftBank is not liable for any loss or alteration of data or settings saved by you due to accident, malfunction or repair of handset. When handset is replaced for repair or changed to a new model, captured pictures, TV links and other information saved on handset cannot be transferred.
- You cannot watch TV if your handset does not have a USIM Card installed or if your contract with SoftBank expires.
- Channels allocated by channel settings are based on information as of April 2008. Whenever there is a change in the regional broadcasting channels, use ***Scan*** to update the channel settings.

Channel Setup

Set channels for your area.

1 Press TV ➡ ■



2 Select *Manual* ➡ ■



- To automatically configure channel settings:
  Select ***Scan***➡ ■

3 Select an area ➡ ■ ➡ Select a prefecture ➡ ■



- For some prefectures, select a regional subdivision as well. If you select ***Hokkaido*** for the area, select a city.

- **Broadcast Signals**
  Image/audio quality may be poor in the following areas due to inadequate signal reception.
  - Areas far away from or extremely close to the broadcast source
  - Mountain areas or places beside tall buildings
  - Inside of a moving train or car, underground, in a tunnel, etc.
  - Near high-tension electrical wires, neon lighting, wireless stations, railway lines, highways, etc.
  - Other areas where there is a large number of signal obstructions, or areas that are cut off from the signal

- **About TV Antenna**
  TV Antenna is built in the upper section (Display side) of handset. Covering this area with your hands or closing handset may disrupt signal reception.
- **Battery Level**
  TV does not activate when battery level is , except during charging. TV will automatically turn off when battery level drops to .
- **About Charging**
  Watch TV while charging the battery.
  - Charging while watching TV may require longer charging time or result in insufficient charging.
  - Placing AC Charger cord near handset when charging may affect TV image.

Watching TV

1 Press [TV]



TV Screen

- TV starts up in full screen. Press [TV] to toggle view screens.

2 Select channels using keypad

- Select channel 10 by pressing [*], channel 11 by [0], and channel 12 by [#].
  Direct channel selection is unavailable when keypad operations are used by the data broadcaster while viewing in Data Broadcast Mode.
- To change channels one by one, press [◀]/[▶]. To automatically search for receivable channels, press and hold [◀]/[▶].

3 To end TV, press [POWER] ➡ *YES* ➡ [■]

- Do not remove the battery while TV is activated. Channel settings, broadcast memory, TV links, and other data may be altered or deleted.
- When a station is broadcasting more than one program at the same time, select a sub program by pressing [◀]/[▶] from the main program.

TV View Operations

Adjust Volume	[▲]/[▼] *1*2
Toggle View Screens	[TV]
Show Channel Information	[↩] (press and hold)
Change Channels	[◀]/[▶] *1
Capture Pictures	[📷]
End TV	[クリア/メモ] *3/[POWER]

*1 Functions assigned to [✛] vary in Landscape View (page 2-2).
*2 Moves cursor in Data Broadcast Mode.
*3 Unavailable in Data Broadcast Mode.

Data Broadcast (Japanese)

Access a variety of program-related information from Data Broadcasts. Information appears in Data Broadcast Panel.

1 Press [✉] to toggle Image Mode and Data Broadcast Mode

- [✉] (To TV) toggles to Image Mode and [✉] (ToData) toggles to Data Broadcast Mode.



Data Broadcast Mode

- In Data Broadcast Panel, use [▲▼] to move cursor and scroll pages.
- Press [TV] while in Data Broadcast Mode to show a data broadcast in full screen. To return to the previous view and toggle screens, press [TV].

- Viewing Data Broadcast information requires no fees. However, accessing websites via links will incur fees.
- Data broadcasts are unavailable in Landscape View.

Image Mode Views

Press [TV] to toggle views.

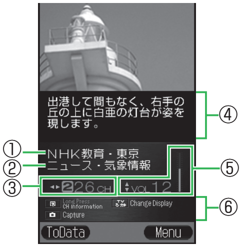


Image Mode in Portrait View



Landscape View



Full Screen View

① Station Name ② Program Title
③ Channel Number ④ Subtitle Area
⑤ Volume ⑥ Key Guide

Using Program Guide

Electronic Program Guide (EPG) S! Appli lets you select a program and activate TV.

1 **Press** ■ ➡ ***TV*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Program Guide*** ➡ ■

Program Guide appears. For following operations, see Program Guide help.

More Features

Functions for Area and Channel Settings (▶ page 6-7)

Functions While Watching TV (▶ page 6-7)

Functions for Data Broadcasts (▶ page 6-7)

TV View Screen Setting (▶ page 13-28)

- Set TV Start-up View

TV Audio Setting (▶ page 13-28)

- Set Audio Output

Settings for Watching TV (▶ page 13-28)

- Channel List Name
- Auto-off Timer

Image and Sound (▶ page 13-28)

- Set Brightness
- Set Image Quality
- Set Image Sharpness
- Set Economy Mode
- Set Subtitles
- Switch Main and Sub Audio

Data Broadcasts (▶ page 13-29)

- Set Data Communication Confirmation Window
- Set Secure Connection Confirmation Window
- Set Memory Access Confirmation Window
- Delete Broadcast Data
- Set Location Information Send Setting
- Set Whether or Not to Send Manufacture Number
- Set Content Storage Location

Setting View Timer

- Configure channel settings in advance (page 6-3).

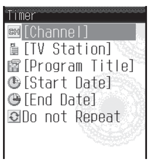
1 Press ■➡*TV*➡■➡*Timer*➡■

- The first time you use the timer, a warning appears. Press ▢ (twice) to select ***OK***. If you select ***NO*** in the confirmation window, the warning will not appear from the next time.



Timer List Window

2 Press ✉ (Create)➡*Manual*➡■



3 Select *Channel*➡■➡*Channel List*➡■➡Select a station ➡■

- Select ***Direct Input*** to directly input a channel number.

4 Select *Start Date*➡■➡Enter a start date and time ➡■➡Select *End Date* ➡■➡Enter an end date and time ➡■

5 Select *Do not Repeat*➡■➡Select a repeat method➡■

6 Press ✉ (OK)

When View Time is Near

Five minutes before the view timer is activated, the notification window appears*, the alarm sounds, and handset vibrates.

* The actual notification window may look different from the following.



- When handset is closed, a notification message appears on External Display.

- The view timer cannot be activated in the following situations.
  - · If handset power is turned off
  - · In Card Reader mode

  End any active functions before the view time.

More Features

Functions for View Timer
(▶ page 6-8)

Settings for View Timer
(▶ page 13-30)

- Set Alarm Volume for Timer Notification
- Set Vibration for Timer Notification

TV

From ➡ TV Screen page 6-4
Data Broadcast Mode page 6-4
Timer List Window page 6-6

Functions for Area and Channel Settings

Add a Reception Area [Add Channel List]

TV Screen ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ■ ➡ *Empty* ➡ ■ ➡ *Manual* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an area ➡ ■ ➡ Select a prefecture ➡ ■

- For some prefectures, select a regional subdivision as well. If you select ***Hokkaido*** for the area, select a city.

■Configuring Channel Settings Automatically

TV Screen ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ■ ➡ *Empty* ➡ ■ ➡ *Scan* ➡ ■

Switch Reception Areas [Switch Channel Lists]

TV Screen ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a channel list ➡ ■

Functions While Watching TV

Select a Channel from Channel List [Select Station]

TV Screen ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Set Channels* ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ ➡ Select a channel ➡ ■

Check Keys for Operating TV [Key Guide]

TV Screen ➡ *Key Guide* ➡ ■

Capture a Picture [Capture]

TV Screen View a program ➡ ➡ *Capture* ➡ ■ ➡ *YES* ➡ ■

- Captured pictures are saved in ***Pictures*** of handset Data Folder.
- Except for your own personal enjoyment, any use of captured pictures that infringes upon the copyrights of copyright holders is prohibited.
- Due to copyright restrictions, you may not be able to capture pictures of certain programs.

Functions for Data Broadcasts

Save/Use TV Links [Save/Use TV Links]

■Saving a TV Link

Data Broadcast Mode Select an item such as ***Save TV Links*** ➡ ■

- The actual procedure depends on the program. For details, see the information within the data broadcast.

■Accessing a Website from a TV Link

■ ➡ ***TV*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***TV Links*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select a TV link ➡ ■

- To view a Memo, do the following.
  ■ ➡ ***TV*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***TV Links*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select a Memo ➡ ✉
- The following icons appear to indicate TV link types.

TV Links	Valid	Expired
Memo		
Link communication contents		
Mobile contents		
PC contents		

- An Internet connection confirmation window may appear depending on the TV link. If you select ***Ask Once Only***, the confirmation window will not appear from the next time.

Functions for View Timer

Use Program Guide to Set View Timer [Set Timer by Program Guide]

Timer List Window ✉ ➡ ***Program Guide*** ➡ ■ ➡ S! Appli starts ➡ Select a program ➡ Set the view timer

Check/Edit/Delete Timer Information [Check/Edit/Delete Timer Information]

■Checking Timer Information

Timer List Window Select an entry ➡ ■

■Editing Timer Information

Timer List Window Select an entry ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ ➡ Select an item ➡ ■ ➡ Edit the item ➡ ✉

■Deleting a Timer Entry

Timer List Window Select an entry ➡ Y! ➡ ***Delete*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***YES*** ➡ ■

- When the timer is set to repeat, a confirmation window appears.

Check/Delete Timer Results [Check/Delete Timer Results]

■Checking a Timer Result

■ ➡ ***TV*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Timer Results*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select an entry ➡ ■

■Deleting a Timer Result

■ ➡ ***TV*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Timer Results*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select an entry ➡ Y! ➡ ***Delete*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***YES*** ➡ ■

7 Camera/Picture Editing

Basics

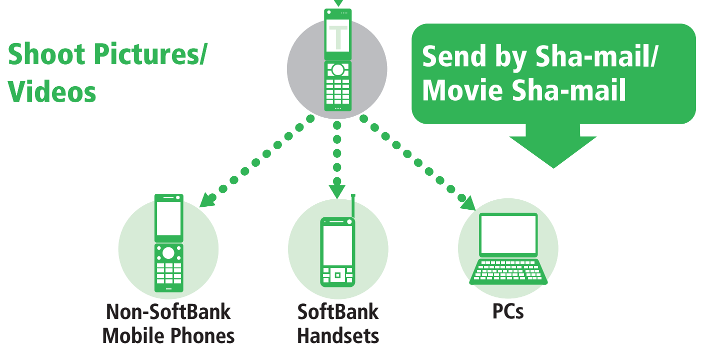
Use handset camera to take pictures and record videos.
Handset is also equipped with a sub camera allowing you to shoot pictures/videos of yourself.

Image Sizes
Select from a variety of sizes, from handy-size pictures or videos perfect for Sha-mail or Movie Sha-mail to high resolution images, to fit your needs.

Shooting Modes
Use the delay timer, take pictures with frames or other effects, or take continuous shots.

Auto Focus
When you press the shutter key, the camera automatically detects the distance to the subject and focuses.

Picture Editing
Compose and edit images by adding stamps or text to pictures you have taken.



- Pictures are saved in JPEG format, and videos in MPEG-4 format.
- To avoid camera shake, hold handset firmly.
- Fingerprints or grime may affect focus. Wipe the lens with a soft cloth.
- Do not block the lens with your fingers or strap when shooting pictures/videos.

Camera Modes

■Mobile
Take pictures to set as wallpaper, etc.
■Digital
Take high-quality pictures to output to external devices such as PC.

Taking a Picture

1 **Press ■ ➡ *Camera* ➡ ■ ➡ *Mobile* or *Digital* ➡ ■**

- Press [camera key] in Standby to activate Viewfinder in the last Camera mode.



Viewfinder

2 **Frame subject in Display ➡ ■ / [camera key]**

Camera focuses, shutter clicks and preview window appears.



Preview Window

- To delete the picture:
  Press [クリア/メモ] ➡ ***YES*** ➡ ■

3 **Press ■ / [camera key]**

If Storage is set to ***Phone Memory***, the picture is saved to ***Pictures*** in Data Folder, and Viewfinder reappears. If it is set to ***Memory Card***, a picture taken in ***Mobile*** mode is saved to ***Pictures***, one taken in ***Digital*** mode to ***Digital Camera***, and Viewfinder reappears.

- Capturing images in low-lighting may compromise image quality. Capture images in adequate lighting or use Mobile Light.

Viewfinder Operations

Toggle Camera Modes	[2ABCか]
Zoom Adjustment	[▲] / [▼] *1
Exposure Adjustment	[◀] / [▶] *1
Auto Focus Lock	[TV] *2
Mobile Light On/Off	[✕ 絵]
Self-view On/Off	[#A/a記号]
Icons On/Off	[0+-わ]
Key Guide On/Off	[1.@あ]

*1 Functions assigned to [multi-selector] vary in Landscape View (page 2-2).
*2 For details of Auto Focus Lock operation, see page 7-10.

More Features

Functions for Taking Pictures
(▶ page 7-10)

Common Functions After Shooting Pictures/Videos
(▶ page 7-10)

Settings for Shooting Pictures/Videos
(▶ page 13-25)

- Save Pictures/Videos Automatically
- Change Storage Location
- Set Image Quality
- Set White Balance
- Adjust Color Control
- Set Picture/Video Effects
- Adjust Flicker
- Set Shortcuts While Shooting Pictures/Videos
- Set File Name

Settings for Taking Pictures
(▶ page 13-26)

- Set Focus Mode
- Change Shutter Sound
- Add Date Stamps
- Set Guidelines
- Take a Picture for a Phone Book Entry

Video Modes

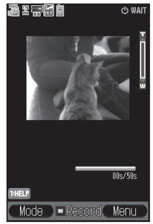
■Video
Record long videos.
■Video Mail
Shoot videos to send as attachments.
■Short Video
Shoot MPEG-4 videos and send to MPEG-4 compatible SoftBank handsets (PDC).

Recording a Video

Recorded videos are automatically saved to the ***Videos*** folder in handset or memory card.

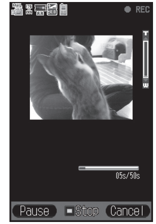
1 Press ■ ➡ *Camera* ➡ ■ ➡ *Video*, *Video Mail* or *Short Video* ➡ ■

- Press and hold [camera] in Standby to activate Video Viewfinder in the last Video mode.



Video Viewfinder

2 Frame subject in Display ➡ ■/[camera]
Start tone sounds, and recording begins.



- In ***Video*** or ***Video Mail*** mode, press [mail] (Pause) to pause, then [mail] (Record) to resume recording.

3 **Press [■]/[📷]**

End tone sounds, and the first frame of the recording appears.



Preview Window

- To delete a video recorded in ***Video Mail*** or ***Short Video*** mode:
  Press [クリア/メモ] ➡ ***YES*** ➡ [■]
- Videos recorded in ***Video*** mode are automatically saved. To delete the recording:
  Press [Y!] ➡ ***Delete*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***YES*** ➡ [■]

4 **Press [■]/[📷]**

Files are saved in the location specified in ***Storage*** and Video Viewfinder reappears.

Video Viewfinder Operations

Toggle Video Modes	[3 DEF さ]
Zoom Adjustment	[▲]/[▼]*
Exposure Adjustment	[◀]/[▶]*
Mobile Light On/Off	[✱ ゛゜ 絵]
Self-view On/Off	[# A/a 記号]
Icons On/Off	[0 +-、わ]
Key Guide On/Off	[1 .@ あ]

* Functions assigned to [Multi-selector] vary in Landscape View (page 2-2).

More Features

Common Functions After Shooting Pictures/Videos
(► page 7-10)

Settings for Shooting Pictures/Videos
(► page 13-25)

- Save Pictures/Videos Automatically
- Change Storage Location
- Set Image Quality
- Set White Balance
- Adjust Color Control
- Set Picture/Video Effects
- Adjust Flicker
- Set Shortcuts While Shooting Pictures/Videos
- Set File Name

Settings for Recording Videos
(► page 13-27)

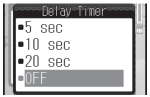
- Do Not Record Sound
- Enlarge Video Viewfinder
- Change Start/End Tone
- Set Preview On/Off
- Set Recorded Video as a Ringtone Pattern

Delay Timer

This feature allows you to take a picture or start recording after [■]/[📷] is pressed and a specified time elapses.

1 **Activate Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder →[Y!]→*Picture* or *Movie*→[■]**

2 **Select *Delay Timer*→[■]**



3 **Select seconds→[■]**

- Zoom is unavailable when the delay timer is activated.

Frame Setting (Still Picture)

1 **Activate Viewfinder→[Y!]→*Add Frame* →[■]**

2 **Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* →[■]**

- To cancel the frame, select ***OFF***.

3 **Select *Pictures*→[■]**

4 **Select a frame→[■] (twice)**

- When Camera mode is set to ***Digital***, you cannot use Add Frame.

Multi Shots (Still Picture)

Take nine pictures in succession.

1 **Activate Viewfinder→[Y!]→*Multi Shots* →[■]**



2 **Select a speed→[■]**

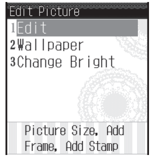
- When Camera mode is set to ***Digital***, you cannot use Multi Shots.
- Night mode is unavailable during Multi Shots.

Images that have been captured and stored in Data Folder or memory card can be edited.
The following types of files can be edited: JPEG files of 2 Mbytes or less, PNG files of 1 Mbyte or less.
Images that are larger than W240×H400 (W400×H240) are reduced to W240×H400. A picture that is smaller than W16×H16 cannot be edited.

- When saving edited image, select ***Save as New*** to save as new file. If ***Overwrite*** is selected, the original file cannot be restored.
- If Data Folder is full, delete unnecessary files from Data Folder before editing a picture.

Basic Operations for Picture Editing

1 **Press ■➡*Tools*➡■➡*Useful Tools*➡■➡*Edit Picture*➡■**

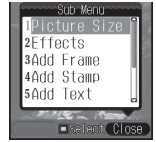


2 **Select *Edit*➡■➡*Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*➡■➡*Pictures* or *Digital Camera*➡■➡Select a picture➡■**



Picture Editing Window

3 **Press**



4 **Select an edit type➡■➡Perform edit operations**

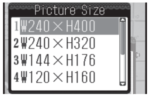


5 **Press (OK)➡*Overwrite* or *Save as New*➡■**

- When you edit pictures in ***Digital Camera*** folder, the edited files cannot be saved in ***Overwrite*** mode.

Changing Size

1 **In Picture Editing Window, press [Y!] ➡ *Picture Size* ➡ [■]**



2 **Select a picture size ➡ [■]**

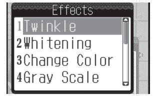
- After selecting a size, use [multi-selector] to adjust the position of the picture to clip.
- To adjust the width or height:
  Press [✉] (Resize) ➡ ***Fit to Width*** or ***Fit to Length*** ➡ [■]
- To rotate the picture:
  Press [✉] (Resize) ➡ ***Rotate Image*** ➡ [■]

3 **Press [Y!] (Cut) ➡ [■]**

Editing is completed.

Picture Effects

1 **In Picture Editing Window, press [Y!] ➡ *Effects* ➡ [■]**



2 **Select an effect ➡ [■]**

- Use [◂▸] to change the effect level in ***Twinkle***, ***Whitening***, ***Change Color***, ***Shade Off***, ***Pinch***, and ***Brush Up***.

3 **Press [■]**

Editing is completed.

Composite Pictures

Composite two pictures.

1 **In Picture Editing Window, press [Y!] ➡ *Overlay* ➡ [■]**

2 **Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ [■] ➡ *Pictures* ➡ [■] ➡ Select a picture ➡ [■]**

- Use [◂▸] to adjust the translucency rate.

3 **Press [■]**

Editing is completed.

More Features

Additional Picture Editing Functions
(▶ page 7-11)

Camera

From ➡ Viewfinder page 7-3
Preview Window page 7-3, 7-6
Video Viewfinder page 7-5

Functions for Taking Pictures

Quickly Focus on Nearby Subjects [Macro]

Viewfinder [Y!] ➡ ***Function*** ➡ [●] ➡ ***Focus Mode*** ➡ [●] ➡ ***Macro*** ➡ [●]

Shoot Scenery without Autofocus [Infinity]

Viewfinder [Y!] ➡ ***Function*** ➡ [●] ➡ ***Focus Mode*** ➡ [●] ➡ ***Infinity*** ➡ [●]

Shoot with Focus Locked [Auto Focus Lock]

- The focus mode setting (page 13-26) must be ***Auto*** in order to use Auto Focus Lock.

Viewfinder Frame subject in Display ➡ [TV] ➡ Re-compose the image ➡ [●]/[📷] ➡ [●]/[📷]

- The focus frame turns from white to green when focus was successful and it turns red when focus has failed.
- After focusing on a subject, press [TV] again to re-focus on the subject.

Change Size of Pictures to Take [Picture Size]

Viewfinder [Y!] ➡ ***Picture Size*** ➡ [●] ➡ Select a picture size ➡ [●]

- For details on picture sizes, see page 14-21.

Take Night Scene Pictures [Night]

Viewfinder [Y!] ➡ ***Night*** ➡ [●] ➡ ***ON*** ➡ [●]

- Night mode is unavailable during Multi Shots (page 7-7).

Take Pictures with Beautiful Skin Tones [Brush Up Mode]

Viewfinder [Y!] ➡ ***Brush Up*** ➡ [●] ➡ ***ON*** ➡ [●]

Common Functions After Shooting Pictures/Videos

View a Picture/Video in Data Folder [View Picture/Video]

Viewfinder / Video Viewfinder [Y!] ➡ ***Data Folder*** ➡ [●] ➡ Select a picture or video ➡ [●]

- To use the full screen, press [Mail] (Full) while viewing a picture.
- To show the key guide, press [1] while playing a video.

Send a Picture/Video via Mail [As Mail]

- If Auto Save (page 13-25) is set to ***OFF***, a picture or video can be sent immediately after it is taken or recorded.
- Videos recorded in ***Video*** mode cannot be sent.

Preview Window [Mail]

- For details on creating S! Mail, see page 4-4.

Send a Picture/Video to Another Handset [Via Infrared/Via Bluetooth®]

- If Auto Save (page 13-25) is set to ***OFF***, a picture or video can be sent immediately after it is taken or recorded.
- Videos recorded in ***Video*** mode cannot be sent from Preview Window. Select a video from Data Folder to send it.

Preview Window [Y!] ➡ ***Send via*** ➡ [●] ➡ ***Via Infrared*** or ***Via Bluetooth*** ➡ [●]

- For sending by infrared communication, see page 12-2. For sending by Bluetooth® communication, see page 12-6.

Additional Picture Editing Functions

From ➡ Picture Editing Window page 7-8

Add Text to a Picture [Add Text]

Picture Editing Window [Y!] ➡ ***Add Text*** ➡ [●] ➡ Select a font size ➡ [●] ➡ Enter text ➡ [●] ➡ [✣] to adjust the position ➡ [●] ➡ [✉] ➡ ***Overwrite*** or ***Save as New*** ➡ [●]

■Changing Font Color

While selecting a position, [✉] ➡ [▲]/[▼] ➡ [●]

■Changing Border Color

While selecting a position, [✉] ➡ [◀]/[▶] ➡ [●]

Add a Frame to a Picture [Add Frame]

Picture Editing Window [Y!] ➡ ***Add Frame*** ➡ [●] ➡ ***Phone Memory*** or ***Memory Card*** ➡ [●] ➡ Select a frame ➡ [●] ➡ [✣] to adjust the position ➡ [●] ➡ [✉] ➡ ***Overwrite*** or ***Save as New*** ➡ [●]

Add a Stamp to a Picture [Add Stamp]

Picture Editing Window [Y!] ➡ ***Add Stamp*** ➡ [●] ➡ ***Phone Memory*** or ***Memory Card*** ➡ [●] ➡ Select a stamp ➡ [●] ➡ [✣] to adjust the position ➡ [●] ➡ [✉] (twice) ➡ ***Overwrite*** or ***Save as New*** ➡ [●]

- If the size of a stamp is larger than the picture, the stamp cannot be added.

Rotate a Picture [Rotate Image]

Picture Editing Window [Y!] ➡ ***Rotate Image*** ➡ [●] ➡ [✉] (◀ ↺ A)/[Y!] (A ↻ ▶) ➡ [●] ➡ [✉] ➡ ***Overwrite*** or ***Save as New*** ➡ [●]

Apply a Mosaic to Part of a Picture [Mosaic]

Picture Editing Window [Y!] ➡ ***Mosaic*** ➡ [●] ➡ [✣] to adjust the position ➡ [●] ➡ [◀▶] to change the texture ➡ [●] ➡ [✉] ➡ ***Overwrite*** or ***Save as New*** ➡ [●]

Mix Pictures to Create Wallpaper [Wallpaper]

■ ➡ *Tools* ➡ ■ ➡ *Useful Tools* ➡ ■ ➡ *Edit Picture* ➡ ■ ➡ *Wallpaper* ➡ ■ ➡ Select [1] ➡ ■ ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a picture ➡ ■ ➡ ✥ to compose the image ➡ ■ ➡ Select [2] to [4] and repeat the operations ➡ ✉ ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ■

- To unset a picture, press Y! (Delete).

Brighten Dark Areas of a Picture [Change Bright]

■ ➡ *Tools* ➡ ■ ➡ *Useful Tools* ➡ ■ ➡ *Edit Picture* ➡ ■ ➡ *Change Bright* ➡ ■ ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a picture ➡ ■ ➡ ◂▭▸ to adjust the brightness ➡ ■ ➡ *Overwrite* or *Save as New* ➡ ■

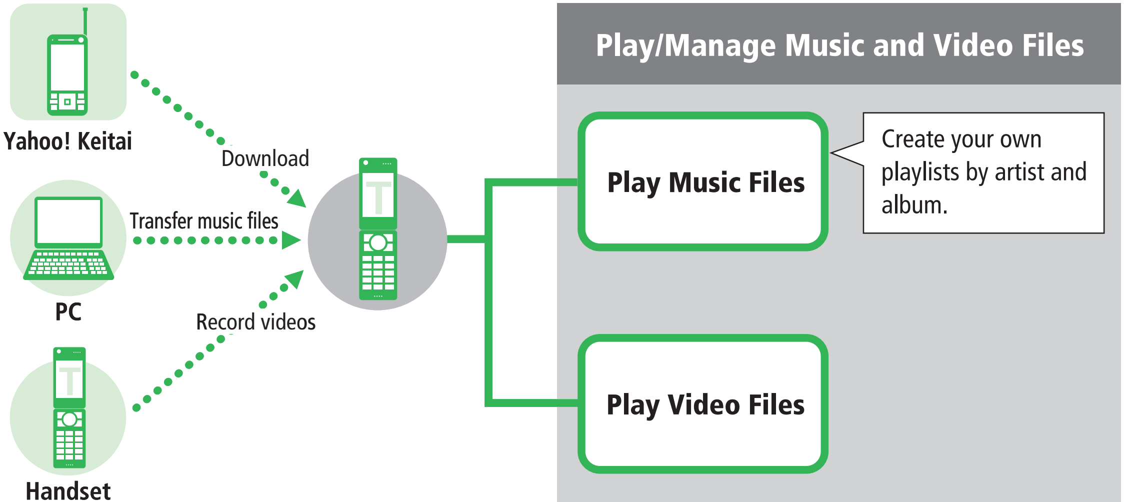
- A picture cannot be saved if its brightness is set to 0 %.

8 Media Player/S! Appli

About Music/Video Playback

Music and videos stored on handset are played and managed with Media Player.

- Access Web pages to download music/video files.
- For a list of compatible file types, see page 14-21.
- Use Earphone-Microphone (not included) with a compatible Bluetooth® device for wireless connection.



- Media Player cannot be used when battery power is low. Charge the battery to use Media Player.

Transferring Files

Download music and video files from Yahoo! Keitai, etc.

- Alternatively, connect handset to a PC using USB cable (not included) to transfer files. For details on file transfer, see page 12-8.

1 **Press** ■ ➡ ***Media Player*** ➡ ■



2 **Select *Audio* or *Videos*** ➡ ■

3 **Select *Download Music* or *Download Videos*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***YES*** ➡ ■

- Follow the onscreen instructions.

Streaming

Access Web pages for streaming music/video files.

- Connection fees apply even if playback is paused as handset remains connected.

1 **Press** ■ ➡ ***Media Player*** ➡ ■

2 **Select *Streaming*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Enter URL*** ➡ ■ ➡ **Enter a URL** ➡ ■

Stream via Bookmarks

Access the bookmarked Web pages for streaming.

1 **Press** ■ ➡ ***Media Player*** ➡ ■

2 **Select *Streaming*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Bookmarks*** ➡ ■

3 **Select a bookmark** ➡ ■

Stream via History

1 **Press** ■ ➡ ***Media Player*** ➡ ■

2 **Select *Streaming*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Recent*** ➡ ■

3 **Select a title** ➡ ■

Stream via Links

Stream content by selecting a link.

1 **Select a link in S! Mail/SMS** ➡ ■ ➡ ***By Yahoo! Keitai*** **or** ***By PC Browser*** ➡ ■

- To stream from a link on a Web page: Select a link ➡ ■
- Operations may vary depending on the website.

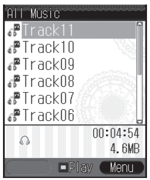
Playing Music

1 Press ■ ➡ ***Media Player*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Audio*** ➡ ■



Audio Menu Window

2 Select ***All Music*** ➡ ■



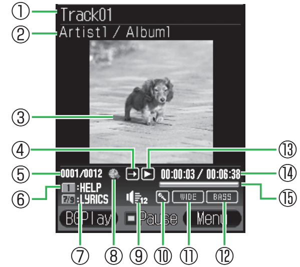
All Music List Window

- Select ***Disc Search*** to show all music files by artist and album.
- Select ***Artist***, ***Album*** or ***Folder*** to show music files by artist, album or folder, respectively.

3 Select a music file ➡ ■

- If the file contains cover art, the artwork appears. If the file contains more than one cover, press [8] to toggle covers during playback.
- To end Media Player, press [POWER].
- Playback Window appears on External Display when handset is closed during playback.

Music Playback Window



Music Playback Window

①Title ②Artist Name/Album Name
③Playback Image
④Play Mode
- All
- Repeat
- Repeat All
- Random
- Current Only

⑤File Number/Total Number of Files
⑥Key Guide
⑦[7]: Previous Lyrics/[9]: Next Lyrics
⑧Web Link ⑨Playback Volume
⑩Voice Cancel ⑪Surround
⑫Equalizer
⑬Playback Status
- Play
- Fast Forward
- Pause
- Rewind
- Buffering
- Stop

⑭Elapsed Playback Time/Total Playback Time
⑮Progress Bar

Operations in Playback Window

Return to the Beginning of a File/ Skip to Previous File	[*/Shift key]/[Left key]
Skip to Next File	[#key]/[Right key]
Fast Forward	Press and hold [Right key]
Rewind	Press and hold [Left key]
Adjust Volume	[Up/Down key]
Key Guide	[1 key]

External Playback Window

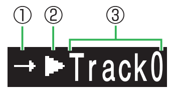
Playback Window appears on External Display when handset is closed during playback.

Activating External Playback Window

1 **Close handset while using Media Player**

- When battery level is low, External Playback Window won't launch.

External Playback Window



External Playback Window

① Play mode
② Playback status
③ Title, artist name and album name run in a ticker from right to left.

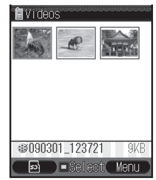
Playing Videos

1 **Press** [Center key] ➡ ***Media Player*** ➡ [Center key] ➡ ***Videos*** ➡ [Center key]



Video Menu Window

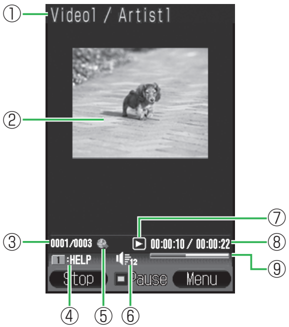
2 **Select** ***Videos*** ➡ [Center key] ➡ ***Phone Memory*** **or** ***Memory Card*** ➡ [Center key]



Video List Window

3 **Select a video file** ➡ [Center key]

Video Playback Window



Video Playback Window

①File Name/Artist Name
②Video
③File Number/Total Number of Files
④Key Guide
⑤Web Link
⑥Playback Volume
⑦Playback Status
- ▶ Play
- ⏸ Pause
- Buffering
- ⏩ Fast Forward
- ⏪ Rewind
- ■ Stop

⑧Elapsed Playback Time/Total Playback Time
⑨Progress Bar

Operations in Playback Window

Skip to Previous File	* ゛゜ 絵 / ◀
Skip to Next File	# A/a 記号 / ▶
Fast Forward	Press and hold ▶ while playing
Rewind	Press and hold ◀ while playing
Adjust Volume	▲▼
Key Guide	1 .@ あ

More Features

Functions for Music/Video Playback
(▶ page 8-10)
Playback Features (Music)
(▶ page 8-10)
Playback Features (Video)
(▶ page 8-10)
Functions for Music/Video Files
(▶ page 8-10)

Settings for Playing Music
(▶ page 13-31)
- Set Audio Output
- Set Wallpaper During Playback

Using Playlists

Adding Songs to a Playlist

1 Press ■ ➡ ***Media Player*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Audio*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Playlist*** ➡ ■

2 Press ✉ ➡ ***New Playlist*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Phone Memory*** or ***Memory Card*** ➡ ■

3 Enter a playlist name ➡ ■ ➡ ***YES*** ➡ ■



Playlist Creation Window

4 Select ***All Music*** ➡ ■

- To select music files by artist or by album: Select ***Artist*** or ***Album*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select an artist or album ➡ ■

5 Select a music file ➡ ■

- To select other files, repeat this step.



6 Press ✉ (Create)

Playing a Playlist

1 Press ■ ➡ ***Media Player*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Audio*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Playlist*** ➡ ■



Playlist Window

2 Select a playlist ➡ ✉ (Play)

Changing a Playlist Name

1 Press ■ ➡ ***Media Player*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Audio*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Playlist*** ➡ ■

2 Select a playlist ➡ ✉ ➡ ***Rename*** ➡ ■

3 Edit the playlist name ➡ ■

More Features

Functions for Playlists

(▶ page 8-11)

Using S! Appli

Download S! Appli from S! Appli sites on the Internet. The same connection fees apply for downloads as Internet connection fees.

- For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-48).
- You can download and use only S! Appli that are specially designed for SoftBank handsets.

Downloading S! Appli

1 Press ■ ➡ ***S! Appli*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Library*** ➡ ■



S! Appli Library

2 Select ***More S! Appli*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***YES*** ➡ ■ ➡ **Select an S! Appli** ➡ ***Download*** ➡ ■

3 Select ***Phone Memory*** **or** ***Memory Card*** ➡ ■

Downloading begins.

- A confirmation window appears when the download is completed.

- If battery level is low, the application may not be completely downloaded.
- If you replace USIM Card, downloaded applications will no longer be available.

Starting S! Appli

1 Press ■ ➡ ***S! Appli*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Library*** ➡ ■

- To switch to memory card Library, press [シンプル] (SD).

2 Select an S! Appli ➡ ■

- When you use a Network S! Appli, a connection fee is charged each time the application connects to the network.
- When using a Network S! Appli while ***Access*** under Security is set to ***Blanket***, handset automatically connects to the network without alert.

Pausing/Resuming/Ending S! Appli

1 While an S! Appli is running, press [POWER]

2 Select ***Pause***, ***Resume*** or ***End*** ➡ ■

Resuming/Ending Paused S! Appli

1 Press ■ ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ■ ➡ *Library* ➡ ■

2 Select *Resume* or *Exit* ➡ ■

More Features

S! Appli

(► page 8-12)

Operational Settings

(► page 13-32)

- Change Sound Effect Volume
- Set Backlight
- Set Flashing of Backlight
- Set Vibration
- Set Priority While Running S! Appli

Other Settings

(► page 13-32)

- Set Confirmation Window for Making Calls or Network Connection
- Update S! Appli Information on Memory Card
- View S! Appli License Information
- Check S! Appli Root Certificates

Media Player

From ➡ All Music List Window page 8-4
Music Playback Window page 8-4
Video Menu Window page 8-5
Video List Window page 8-5
Video Playback Window page 8-6
Playlist Window page 8-7

Functions for Music/Video Playback

Specify a Point to Start Playback [Search Time]

Music Playback Window / Video Playback Window While a file is playing/paused➡[Y!]➡***Search Time***➡[■]➡Enter a start position (time)➡[■]

Access Recently Played Files [Recent]

Playlist Window / Video Menu Window ***Recent***➡[■]➡Select a file➡[■]

Playback Features (Music)

Play Songs in Random Order [Random Play]

Music Playback Window While a file is playing/paused➡[Y!]➡***Play Mode***➡[■]➡***Random***➡[■]

Repeat [Repeat Play]

Music Playback Window While a file is playing/paused➡[Y!]➡***Play Mode***➡[■]➡***Repeat*** or ***Repeat All***➡[■]

Change Sound Quality [Surround/Equalizer/Voice Cancel]

Music Playback Window While a file is playing/paused➡[Y!]➡***Surround***, ***Equalizer*** or ***Voice Cancel***➡[■]➡Select a sound effect, ***ON*** or ***OFF***➡[■]

Run Media Player in Background [Multitask]

Music Playback Window While a file is playing/paused➡[✉]

Playback Features (Video)

Window Size [Normal Screen/Full Screen]

Video Playback Window While a file is playing/paused➡[Y!]➡***Normal Screen*** or ***Full Screen***➡[■]

Functions for Music/Video Files

Sort Music/Video Files [Sort by]

■Music Files

All Music List Window Select a file➡[Y!]➡***Sort by***➡[■]➡Select a criterion➡[■]

■Video Files

Video List Window Select a file➡[Y!]➡***Change View***➡[■]➡***Sort by***➡[■]➡Select a criterion➡[■]

Send Music/Video Files to Another Handset [Send File]

■ ➡ *Data Folder* ➡ ■ ➡ *Ring Song•Tone*, *Music* or *Videos* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a music or video file ➡ [Y!] ➡ *Send* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a transmission method ➡ ■

- For sending by infrared communication, see page 12-2. For sending by Bluetooth® communication, see page 12-6.

View Music/Video File Properties [Details]

All Music List Window / Video List Window Select a file ➡ [Y!] ➡ *Details* ➡ ■

Functions for Playlists

From ➡ Music Playback Window page 8-4
Playlist Window page 8-7

Add a Song Being Played to a Playlist [To Playlist]

Music Playback Window While a file is playing/paused ➡ [Y!] ➡ *To Playlist* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a playlist ➡ ■

Add a Song Being Played to My Library [To My Library]

Music Playback Window While a file is playing/paused ➡ Press and hold [TV]

Add Songs to a Playlist [Add Tracks]

Playlist Window Select a playlist ➡ ■ ➡ [Y!] ➡ *Add Tracks* ➡ ■ ➡ *All Music* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a music file ➡ ■ ➡ [✉]

- To select music files by artist or album, select *Artist* or *Album* and select an artist or album, respectively.

Change Playing Order of a Playlist [Change Order]

Playlist Window Select a playlist ➡ ■ ➡ Select a file ➡ [✉] ➡ Select a position ➡ ■

Delete Songs from a Playlist [Remove Tracks]

Playlist Window Select a playlist ➡ ■ ➡ [Y!] ➡ *Remove Tracks* ➡ ■ ➡ *One* ➡ ■ ➡ *YES* ➡ ■

- To delete multiple music files, select *Select Multi*, select files you want to delete, and press [✉].
- If you delete all files on a playlist, the playlist will be deleted, too.

Copy a Playlist [Copy Playlist]

Playlist Window Select a playlist ➡ [Y!] ➡ *Copy* ➡ ■ ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ■

Delete a Playlist [Delete Playlist]

Playlist Window Select a playlist ➡ [Y!] ➡ *Delete* ➡ ■ ➡ *YES* ➡ ■

S! Appli

From ➡ S! Appli Library page 8-8

Set an S! Appli as Screensaver [S! Appli Screensaver Settings]

■ ➡ ***S! Appli*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Settings*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Screensaver*** ➡ ■

■Selecting an S! Appli

Screensavers ➡ ■ ➡ Select an S! Appli ➡ ■ ➡ ***YES*** ➡ ■

■Setting S! Appli Start Time

Y! ➡ ***Start Time*** ➡ ■ ➡ Enter a time before S! Appli starts ➡ ■

- Even if there is an incoming call, Answering Machine will not operate when an S! Appli is set as Screensaver or when ***Voice Call*** of Calls&Alarms (page 13-32) is set to ***Continue Apps***.
- Some Screensaver S! Appli may pause when the time set for Power Saving (page 13-5) is reached depending on the application.
- Some S! Appli cannot be set as Screensaver depending on the application.

Move S! Appli [Move/Select Multi/Move All]

■Moving One Application

S! Appli Library Select an application ➡ Y! ➡ ***Move*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***One*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***YES*** ➡ ■

■Moving Multiple Applications

S! Appli Library Y! ➡ ***Move*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Select Multi*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select applications ➡ ■ ➡ [シングル] ➡ ***YES*** ➡ ■

■Moving All Applications

S! Appli Library Y! ➡ ***Move*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***All*** ➡ ■ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ***YES*** ➡ ■

- Screensaver settings will be canceled if an S! Appli set as Screensaver is moved to memory card.
- Some preinstalled S! Appli cannot be moved depending on the application. Some S! Appli cannot be moved to memory card depending on the application.
- If there is the same S! Appli on handset and memory card, the S! Appli will be overwritten.

Delete S! Appli [Delete/Select Multi/Delete All]

■Deleting One Application

S! Appli Library Select an application ➡ Y! ➡ ***Delete*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***One*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***YES*** ➡ ■

■Deleting Multiple Applications

S! Appli Library Y! ➡ ***Delete*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Select Multi*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select applications ➡ ■ ➡ [シングル] ➡ ***YES*** ➡ ■

■Deleting All Applications

S! Appli Library Y! ➡ ***Delete*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***All*** ➡ ■ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ***YES*** ➡ ■

- If a preinstalled S! Appli is deleted, ***Reset All*** does not restore the application.

View S! Appli Properties [Details]

S! Appli Library Select an S! Appli ➡ Y! ➡ ***Details*** ➡ ■

About Tools

Information Management Tools

Manage information on handset.



Calendar

View Calendar and save events. Use information stored in the events to make calls and create messages.

Tasks

Save tasks with time limit. Set the alarm for deadline, or organize tasks to check based on whether they are Completed, Not Completed or Overdue.

Time Table

Create a time table and check your class schedule.

Notepad

Save notes. You can access saved notes while entering text. This is especially useful if often-used phrases and memos are saved.

Voice Recorder

Record and play back sounds. The recordings can be sent via mail and set as ringtone.

Information Browsing Tools

View and check all kinds of information.

S! Quick News

Check various pieces of information delivered at a regular interval and S! Loop items from Active Window.

S! Information Channel

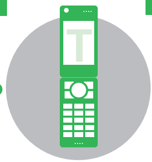
Automatically download subscribed information. Use Weather Indicator that posts weather forecast in Standby.

Electronic Books

Use BookSurfing® and e-Book Viewer to view electronic books, comics, and albums.

Lifestyle Support Tools

These tools support everyday life.



Other Tools

Barcode Reader

Scan QR codes with the camera, and use scanned information.

Ku-man's Room (Japanese)

Visit Ku-man's Room to change his outfit or receive messages from him.

Osaifu-Keitai®

Hold handset up to a reader at a cash register to pay with e-money, or use handset as a point card.

S! GPS Navi

Uses positioning information to show your location on a map or the best route to your destination.

Idokoro Mail

Sends messages to inform others when you have entered or left a specific area.

Alarms

An alarm sounds at a specified time. You can set the alarm to sound only on a specific day of the week and set the snooze function.

World Clock

View dates and times of cities around the world. It is also possible to show the current times of two cities (countries) in Standby.

Calculator

Includes basic arithmetic operations, percentages, and memory. You can also calculate currency conversions.

Dictionary

Three useful dictionaries, Japanese, English-Japanese and Japanese-English, and a medical dictionary (Japanese) are available on handset.

Kitchen Timer

Set an alarm to sound after a specific time expires.

Saving Events

Opening Calendar

1 Press and hold [ ]



Calendar Window

- " ▪ " and/or the start time, event title and stamp icon are shown on the date that has events.
- Press [✱] or [#] to switch to the previous or next window.

2 Press [TV] to select a view format

- Switch between Monthly View, Monthly & Event View, Weekly View, 4 Month View and All View.

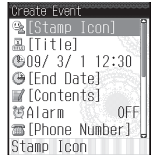
Jumping to a Specified Date

1 In Calendar Window, press [Y!] ➡ *Jump* ➡ [■]

2 Enter a date ➡ [■]

Saving an Event

1 From Calendar Window, select the date to save an event ➡ [✉] (Create)



Create Event Window

2 Select *Title* ➡ [■] ➡ Enter a title ➡ [■]

3 Select the start date and time field ➡ [■] ➡ *Date&Time* or *Date Only* ➡ [■] ➡ Enter a date and time ➡ [■]

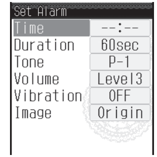
- Enter a time in the 24-hour system.
- Enter only a date, when you select ***Date Only***.

4 Select *End Date* ➡ [■] ➡ Enter a date and time ➡ [■]

- Enter a time in the 24-hour system.
- If ***Date Only*** is selected for the start date and time, this field cannot be entered.

5 Select *Contents* ➡ [■] ➡ Enter details of the event ➡ [■]

6 Select *Alarm* ➡ [■] ➡ *ON* ➡ [■]



Event Alarm Setting Window

7 Select *Time* ➡ [■] ➡ Enter a date and time ➡ [■] ➡ [✉] (OK)

- Enter a time in the 24-hour system.

8 Press [✉] (OK) ➡ *OK* ➡ [■]

- If you select ***Notify Only Once*** when a confirmation window appears telling that the alarm will not start if the power is turned off, this window will not appear from the next time.

Alarm Time Operations

The alarm stops automatically after a set ring time, but you can also stop it manually.

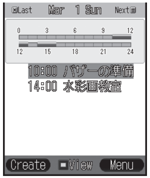
1 Press any key while the alarm is sounding

- To view the event details, press [✉] (View) after stopping the alarm.

Checking an Event

1 From Calendar Window, select the date to check➡[■]

- From All View Window, select an event and press [■] to open Event Details Window.



Daily View Window

2 Select an event➡[■]



Event Details Window

Deleting an Event

1 From Daily View Window, select the event to delete

2 Press [Y!]➡*Delete*➡[■]

3 Select *One*➡[■]➡*YES*➡[■]

- To delete all events for the day: Select ***For this Day***➡[■]➡***YES***➡[■]

Deleting All Previous Events

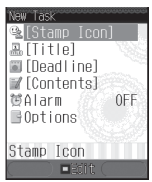
1 From Calendar Window, select the next day of the event to delete

2 Press [Y!]➡*Delete*➡[■]➡*Before Today*➡[■]➡*YES*➡[■]

Saving Tasks

1 Press [■]➡*Tools*➡[■]➡*Tasks*➡[■]

2 Press [Y!]➡*Create New*➡[■]



New Task Window

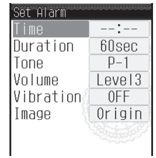
3 Select *Title*➡[■]➡Enter a title➡[■]

4 Select *Deadline*➡[■]➡Enter a date and time➡[■]

- Enter a time in the 24-hour system.

5 Select *Contents*➡[■]➡Enter details of the task➡[■]

6 Select *Alarm*➡[■]➡*ON*➡[■]



Task Alarm Setting Window

7 Select *Time*➡[■]➡Enter a date and time➡[■]➡[✉] (OK)

- Enter a time in the 24-hour system.

8 Press [✉] (OK)➡*OK*➡[■]

- If you select ***Notify Only Once*** when a confirmation window appears telling that the alarm will not start if the power is turned off, this window will not appear from the next time.

Alarm Time Operations

The alarm stops automatically after a set ring time, but you can also stop it manually.

1 **Press any key while the alarm is sounding**

- To view the task details, press [Mail] (View) after stopping the alarm.

Checking Tasks

1 **Press ■➡*Tools*➡■➡*Tasks*➡■**



Tasks Window

- To change the view format:
  Press [Y!]➡*Change View*➡■➡Select a view format➡■
- To change the status of a task:
  Select a task➡[Mail] (Status)➡Select the status➡■

Deleting a Task

1 **From Tasks Window, select the task to delete**

2 **Press [Y!]➡*Delete*➡■➡*One*➡■➡*YES*➡■**

More Features

Functions for Calendar (► page 9-27)

Functions for Saving Events/Tasks (► page 9-27)

Functions for Saving Events (► page 9-28)

Functions for Saving Tasks (► page 9-28)

Functions for Checking/Managing Events (► page 9-28)

Functions for Checking/Managing Tasks (► page 9-29)

Settings for Saving Events (► page 13-38)

- Change Alarm Volume
- Change Vibration
- Set an Image to Appear at Set Time
- Set a Stamp Icon
- Set Category
- Set a Phone Number/E-mail Address/URL
- Set Link Information (Message/Web Page/Image)
- Set a Location

Settings for Calendar (► page 13-39)

- Set Start-up View of Calendar
- Change Font Color of Events
- Lock Calendar

Settings for Saving Tasks (► page 13-39)

- Change Alarm Volume
- Change Vibration
- Set an Image to Appear at Set Time
- Set a Stamp Icon
- Set Task Priority
- Set Task Status

Settings for Tasks (► page 13-40)

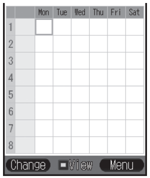
- Lock Tasks

9 Tools

Creating a Time Table

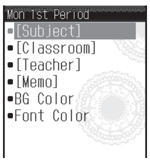
A time table from Monday to Saturday can be created.
Subjects and classrooms of up to eight periods per day, and font colors can be entered/specified.

1 **Press ■ ➡ *Tools* ➡ ■ ➡ *Useful Tools* ➡ ■ ➡ *Time Table* ➡ ■**



Time Table Window

2 **Select a period ➡ Y! ➡ *Edit* ➡ ■**



3 **Select *Subject* ➡ ■ ➡ Enter a subject ➡ ■**

- To enter a classroom, teacher or memo: Select an item ➡ ■ ➡ Enter information ➡ ■
- To specify the background or font color: Select ***BG Color*** or ***Font Color*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select a background or font color ➡ ■

4 **Press ✉ (OK)**

Checking Time Table

1 **From Time Table Window, select a period ➡ ■**

Deleting a Class from Time Table

1 **From Time Table Window, select the period to delete**

2 **Press Y! ➡ *Delete* ➡ ■ ➡ *One* ➡ ■ ➡ *YES* ➡ ■**

More Features

Time Table Functions

(► page 9-29)

Time Table Settings

(► page 13-40)

- Set Start/End Time of a Period
- Reset Time Settings to Default

Notepad

Using Notepad

1 Press ■ ➡ *Tools* ➡ ■ ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ■



Notepad List Window

2 Select a blank notepad ➡ ■

3 Enter contents ➡ ■

Setting Category

1 From Notepad List Window, select the notepad to set an icon for ➡ Y! ➡ *Set Category* ➡ ■

2 Select a category ➡ ■

The icon of the selected category appears.

Viewing Notepad

1 From Notepad List Window, select a notepad ➡ ■

Deleting a Notepad

1 From Notepad List Window, select a notepad

2 Press Y! ➡ *Delete* ➡ ■ ➡ *One* ➡ ■ ➡ *YES* ➡ ■

More Features

Notepad Functions

(► page 9-29)

Voice Recorder

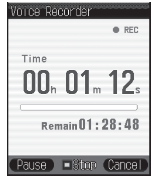
- Use Voice Recorder exercising common morals and manners.
- Note that recording of some concerts and shows is not allowed even for personal use.
- If handset receives a call during recording, recording ends and data is automatically saved in order to give priority to the call. If you don't want to receive calls during recording, set handset to Offline Mode.

1 Press ■ ➡ *Tools* ➡ ■ ➡ *Useful Tools* ➡ ■ ➡ *Voice Recorder* ➡ ■



Voice Recorder Window

2 Select *Record* ➡ ■ (twice)



Voice Recorder Recording Window

- Sound is recorded through the microphone.
- Press (Pause) to pause recording. To resume recording, press ■. To save the recording data, press (Save).
- When the remaining time available for recording is less than 10 seconds, ● REC flashes.

3 Press ■

Sounds recorded with Voice Recorder are automatically saved in the ***Ring Song• Tone*** folder.

Playing Recordings

1 From Voice Recorder Window, select *Recordings* ➡ ■

2 Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ■

3 Select a file ➡ ■

- Use during playback to adjust the volume.

More Features

Voice Recorder Functions

(► page 9-30)

About Osaifu-Keitai®

Osaifu-Keitai® is a service that allows you to use handset for shopping with e-money, or use it as a point card or membership card. Hold up the mark on the back of handset to a reader/writer. Osaifu-Keitai® can be used even while handset is turned off. Note, however, that Osaifu-Keitai® cannot be used while the battery is removed.

- For more information about Osaifu-Keitai®, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-48).

Getting Started

■IC card

"IC card" means an IC chip built in an Osaifu-Keitai® compatible terminal.

■Lifestyle-Appli

This is an S! Appli for using Osaifu-Keitai®.

- Your handset comes with a preinstalled e-money Lifestyle-Appli called "Edy". "Edy" is the brand name of a prepaid e-money service managed by bitWallet, Inc.

Precautions

- The data on the IC card can be misused if your Osaifu-Keitai® compatible handset is lost or stolen. SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any losses suffered by you if this happens.
- Before deciding whether to use an Osaifu-Keitai® service, be sure to contact the service provider about the terms, conditions, and other rules governing its use.
- Connection fees may be incurred when downloading a Lifestyle-Appli or when using a Lifestyle-Appli that requires network connection.
- Do not remove the stickers from the back of the battery cover or from handset in the area around the battery, and do not remove the battery cover. Doing so may make it impossible to use Osaifu-Keitai®.
- Certain types of service and usage conditions may cause data to be stored on the IC card. The procedure for deleting such data from the IC card depends on the Lifestyle-Appli. For details, contact the Osaifu-Keitai® service provider.
- SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any loss or corruption of data or settings on the IC card due to malfunction or repair.
- Be sure to keep separate records of the security code, contact information, and other information for each service so you do not forget them.

Using Osaifu-Keitai®

Downloading Lifestyle-Appli

1. **Press** ■ ➡ ***Data Folder*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Lifestyle-Appli*** ➡ ■
2. **Select** ***Download*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***YES*** ➡ ■ ➡ **Download a Lifestyle-Appli**
   - Lifestyle-Appli are stored in the ***Lifestyle-Appli*** folder of Data Folder.

- Downloading may not end normally if battery level is low.
- A downloaded Lifestyle-Appli cannot be used if you replace USIM Card.

9 Tools

Subscription and Setup

1 **Press ■ ➡ *Tools* ➡ ■ ➡ *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ■ ➡ *Lifestyle* ➡ ■**

2 **Select the Lifestyle-Appli to subscribe and set up ➡ ■**

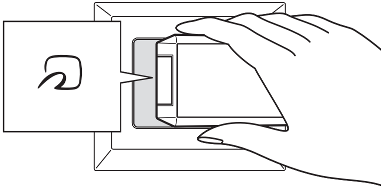
- You must subscribe to an Osaifu-Keitai® service (hereafter "service") and configure a number of settings.
- The subscription method and the settings depend on the Lifestyle-Appli. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Using Osaifu-Keitai®

The e-money example below shows how to use a reader/writer to read IC card data.

- Before performing this procedure, you must subscribe to a service, configure its settings, and make a deposit in your e-money account.
- There is no need to activate Lifestyle-Appli to perform this procedure.
- Osaifu-Keitai® can be used even while handset is turned off. Note, however, that a Lifestyle-Appli will not activate while handset is turned off.

1 **Hold the mark up to a reader/writer**



- Whenever there is difficulty reading the data, try moving handset back and forth, left and right.

2 **Check the reader/writer display to confirm that the read was performed**

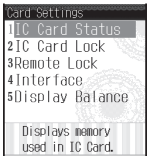
- Data may not be read if there is a metal object or other obstruction between the mark and the reader/writer.
- Osaifu-Keitai® cannot be used when battery level is low. Charge the battery to use Osaifu-Keitai®.

IC Card Lock

Disable IC card communications.

Turning IC Card Lock On/Off

1 **Press ■ ➡ *Tools* ➡ ■ ➡ *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ■ ➡ *Card Settings* ➡ ■**



Card Settings Window

2 **Select *IC Card Lock* ➡ ■ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ *ON* or *OFF* ➡ ■**

Remote Lock

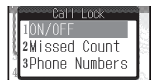
Disable Osaifu-Keitai® remotely by calling handset from another phone (Call Lock) or by sending an e-mail with a preset subject to handset (Mail Lock).

- You must set a Lock Phone Number or Lock Password, and set Call Lock or Mail Lock to ***ON*** in advance.

Setting a Lock Phone Number

1 **From Card Settings Window, select *Remote Lock* ➡ ■ ➡ Enter Handset Code**

2 **Select *Call Lock* ➡ ■**



3 **Select *Phone Numbers* ➡ ■**

4 **Press ✉ ➡ *Add* ➡ ■ ➡ *Phone Book* ➡ ■**

- Select ***Phone Number*** to enter a phone number directly.
- Select ***Call Log*** to select a phone number from Call Log.
- Select ***Payphone*** or ***Withheld*** to remotely lock handset from a pay phone or a withheld number.

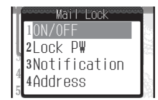
5 **Select an entry ➡ ■ ➡ Select a phone number ➡ ■ (twice)**

Setting a Lock Password

Set a password (subject) for Mail Lock.

1 **From Card Settings Window, select *Remote Lock* ➡ ■ ➡ Enter Handset Code**

2 **Select *Mail Lock* ➡ ■**



3 **Select *Lock PW* ➡ ■**

4 **Enter a lock password ➡ ■**

9 Tools

Turning Call Lock/Mail Lock On

- Note that a Lock Phone Number or Lock Password must be set in advance.

1 **From Card Settings Window, select *Remote Lock*➡■➡Enter Handset Code**

2 **Select *Mail Lock* or *Call Lock*➡■**

3 **Select *ON/OFF*➡■➡*ON* or *OFF* ➡■**

Activating Remote Lock

Using Call Lock

1 **Place a call to handset from a preset phone number**

2 **Hang up the phone**

- The calls must go unanswered three times in a row within three minutes.

- The current incoming call count is cleared in the following cases:
  - If a call is received from another preset phone number
  - If a call placed to handset is answered
  - If handset is turned off
  - If the number of incoming calls does not reach the preset number (default is 3) within three minutes
- If Call Lock is performed during a Video Call, IC Card Lock will turn on but there will be no message telling that the IC card has been locked.
- Call Lock cannot be performed during a voice call if Call Waiting is set to ***OFF***.

Using Mail Lock

1 **Create a message with the preset lock password in the subject field, and send it to handset**

- Do not enter anything in other fields of the message.
- IC Card Lock will turn on when the message is received.

- If handset is unable to receive mail for some reason, IC Card Lock will not be turned on even if you send a Mail Lock message.

Canceling Remote Lock

Set IC Card Lock to ***OFF***.

More Features

Functions for Osaifu-Keitai®
(▶ page 9-30)

Settings for Osaifu-Keitai®
(▶ page 13-40)

- Set Whether Functions Start Up When Handset is Held Up to a Reader/Writer
- Check IC Card Information
- Do Not Send a Lock Engaged Notification

Using S! GPS Navi

About S! GPS Navi

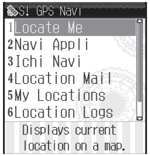
S! GPS Navi uses location information obtained from the GPS satellite and by communication with base stations.
View on the map where you are, and send your location information to compatible SoftBank handsets.
The navigation application (Navi appli) is preinstalled on handset. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-48).

- When signal reception of the GPS satellite is poor, handset position is determined by base station information. However, the margin of error may vary from a few hundred meters to several kilometers in radius, depending on the base station's location/signal strength.
- When you cannot confirm the right location, move to an open-air space.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for any damages arising from use of the location information provided.
- Positioning cannot be performed by handset while Positioning Lock is in use.

Starting Navi Appli

Use Navi appli to retrieve information about your current location or check the route to your destination.

1 **Press ■➡*Tools*➡■➡*S! GPS Navi* ➡■**



S! GPS Navi Window

2 **Select *Navi Appli*➡■**

Checking Your Current Position

1 **From S! GPS Navi Window, select *Locate Me*➡■**

- Confirmation window appears. Select ***Ask Once Only*** to always send location information without confirmation.

- When the location information send setting (***LocationProperty***) is set to ***Do not Send***, the current position cannot be checked. Set to ***Always Ask*** or ***Send***.

Using Ichi Navi

Locate other people or detect the approximate position of your handset in case it is lost.

1 **From S! GPS Navi Window, select *Ichi Navi*➡■**

- Follow the onscreen instructions.

- To use Ichi Navi, the person requesting location information must join the service.
- Before receiving a request for location information, you need to sign up on Yahoo! Keitai the people you allow to request location information (people you inform of your location).
- Ichi Navi is not effective in areas that are out of signal range.
- You need to apply and make settings in advance so that you can search for a lost handset from a PC.

More Features

Functions for S! GPS Navi

(▶ page 9-31)

Settings for S! GPS Navi

(▶ page 13-41)

- Save a Map URL
- Edit Map URL Display Name
- Edit Map URL
- Delete a Map URL
- Set Map URL
- Set Navi Appli
- Lock Positioning
- Set Location Information Send Setting

Using Idokoro Mail

Inform other people of your arrival in or departure from a specified area. Send your location information by a simple operation (Simple Notice).

- When signal reception from the GPS satellite is poor, handset position is determined by base station information. However, the margin of error may vary from a few hundred meters to several kilometers in radius, depending on the base station's location/signal strength.
- When you cannot confirm the right location, move to an open-air space.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for any damages arising from use of the location information provided.
- Positioning cannot be performed by handset while Positioning Lock is in use.
- Connection fees apply for sending mail notifications and using positioning service.
- Idokoro Mail is unavailable while using handset abroad.

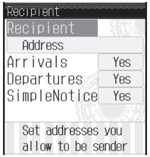
Saving People to Recipients List

1 **Press ■➡*Tools*➡■➡*Useful Tools*➡■➡*Idokoro Mail*➡■➡Enter Handset Code**



Idokoro Mail Window

2 **Select *Recipients List*➡■➡Select a list item➡■**



Recipient Window

3 **Select *Recipient*➡■➡Select an entry from Phone Book➡■➡Select a phone number or e-mail address➡■**

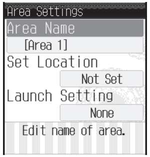
4 **Select each mail notification➡■➡*Yes* or *No*➡■➡✉ (OK)**

Saving Locations to Areas List

1 **From Idokoro Mail Window, select *Areas List*➡■**

- If Recipients List has no entry, a message appears. Save addresses to Recipients List to use Idokoro Mail.

2 **Select an area list item➡■**



Area Settings Window

3 **Select *Area Name*➡■➡Enter an area name➡■**

4 **Select *Set Location*➡■➡*Position*➡■➡Start positioning**

- To specify from Location Logs or My Locations:
  Select ***Location Logs*** or ***My Locations***➡■➡Select location information➡■
- To specify from Phone Book:
  Select ***Phone Book***➡■➡Select a Phone Book entry that has location information➡■

5 **Select *Launch Setting*→■→*Select Date*→■→*Date*→■→Enter a date →■→*Arrivals Time* or *Departures Time*→■→*ON*→■→Enter a start time and duration→■→✉ (OK)**

- To specify a day of the week: Select ***Weekly*** →■→Select ***Arrive*** or ***Depart*** for a day of the week→■→***ON*** →■→Enter a start time and duration→ ■→✉ (OK)

6 **Press ✉ (OK)**

Mail Notifications

Automatically Sending Notifications

When the specified time comes, your current position is obtained using GPS and it is compared with location information of the saved area. When your departure or arrival is confirmed, a mail notification is sent. When your departure or arrival cannot be confirmed in the specified time period or positioning cannot be performed because you are out of range, a mail notification is automatically sent.

Manually Sending Notifications (Simple Notice)

Send a Simple Notice to preset recipients (Recipients must be set to ***Yes*** in Recipient Window).

- Side Key must be set to ***SimpleNotice*** in advance (page 2-4).

1 **Press and hold 📷 while handset is closed**

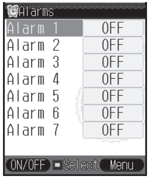
More Features

Functions for Idokoro Mail
(▶ page 9-31)

Using Alarms

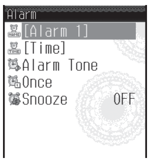
Setting an Alarm

1 **Press [■] ➡ *Tools* ➡ [■] ➡ *Alarms* ➡ [■]**



Alarm List Window

2 **Select an alarm ➡ [■]**



Set Alarm Window

3 **Select *Time* ➡ [■] ➡ Enter a time ➡ [■]**

- Enter a time in the 24-hour system.

4 **Select *Once* ➡ [■] ➡ Select a repeat interval ➡ [■]**

- When you select ***Weekly***, do the following.
  Select day(s) of the week ➡ [■] ➡ [Mail key] (OK)

5 **Select *Snooze* ➡ [■] ➡ *ON* or *OFF* ➡ [■] ➡ Enter a time between alarm tones ➡ [■]**

6 **Press [Mail key] (OK) ➡ *OK* ➡ [■]**

- If you select ***Notify Only Once*** when a confirmation window appears telling that the alarm will not start if the power is turned off, this window will not appear from the next time.

Alarm Time Operations

The alarm stops automatically after a set ring time, but you can also stop it manually.

1 **Press any key while the alarm is sounding**

When Snooze is Set

If Snooze is set to ***ON***, the alarm plays in specified intervals up to five additional times.
To stop Snooze and return to Standby:
Stop the alarm ➡ ***Stop Snooze*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***YES*** ➡ [■]

Canceling an Alarm

1 **From Alarm List Window, select the alarm to cancel**

2 **Press [Mail key] (ON/OFF)**

Deleting an Alarm

1 **From Alarm List Window, select the alarm to delete**

2 **Press [Y! key] ➡ *Reset* ➡ [■] ➡ *YES* ➡ [■]**

More Features

Alarm Functions

(► page 9-32)

Alarm Settings

(► page 13-42)

- Change Alarm Volume
- Change Vibration
- Set an Image to Appear at Set Time

9 Tools

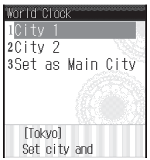
World Clock

Handset shows the time of the city set as Main City. If you set City 1 and City 2, and set ***World-Digital*** or ***World-Analog*** as Standby clock (page 2-8), the dates and times of both City 1 and City 2 are shown in Standby.

Setting World Clock

Setting City 1/City 2

1 **Press ■ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Phone Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Clock* ➡ ■ ➡ *World Clock* ➡ ■**



World Clock Setting Window

2 **Select *City 1* or *City 2* ➡ ■ ➡ ▫ to select a city ➡ ■**

Switching Main City

1 **From World Clock Setting Window, select *Set as Main City* ➡ ■**

2 **Select *City 1* or *City 2* ➡ ■**

Viewing World Clock

In World Clock Window, move cursor (yellow line) on the map to view dates, times and time differences of major cities. The time zones of City 1 and City 2 are indicated in green and red lines, respectively.

1 **Press ■ ➡ *Tools* ➡ ■ ➡ *Useful Tools* ➡ ■ ➡ *World Clock* ➡ ■**



World Clock Window

2 **Use ▫ to select a city**

- To switch Daylight Saving Time (DST) on or off, press ✉ (DSTon) or ✉ (DSToff).

More Features

World Clock Functions

(► page 9-32)

World Clock Settings

(► page 13-42)

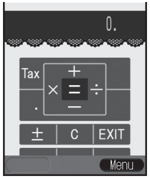
- Set a City by GMT Time Difference
- Set Daylight Saving Time (DST)

9

Tools

Using Calculator

1 Press ■ ➡ ***Tools*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Calculator*** ➡ ■



Calculator Window

Operations in Calculator Window

Enter Numbers	0 to 9
+	▲
−	▼
×	◀
÷	▶
=	■
± (Switch +/−)	(Send key)
Tax	シンプル
C (Clear)	クリア/メモ
. (Decimal)	TV
EXIT	POWER

- **Other Options by Pressing Y! in Calculator Window**
  - Converter: Enter the currency exchange rate and then perform currency conversion calculations.
  - Clear All: Delete the input value and clear memory.
  - MS: Save the input value to memory.
  - M+: Add the input value to the value stored in memory.
  - MR: Show the value stored in memory.
  - %: Calculate a percentage.
  - 1/X: Calculate a reciprocal.
  - SQRT: Calculate a square root.
  - Set Tax Rate: Set the tax rate to be calculated when you press シンプル. Enter the tax rate and press ■.

Using Dictionaries

Use Japanese, English-Japanese, and Japanese-English dictionaries. ***Medical Book*** (簡単メディカルBOOK) (Japanese) is also available.

"Jispa" of Gakken Co., Ltd. is bundled as Japanese dictionary, English-Japanese dictionary and Japanese-English dictionary.

簡単メディカルBOOK　©shogakukan

1 Press ■ ➡ ***Tools*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Dictionary*** ➡ ■



2 Select ***Japanese***, ***English-Japanese*** or ***Japanese-English*** ➡ ■

3 Press TV ➡ Enter a keyword ➡ ■

4 Select a word ➡ ■

More Features

Functions for Calculator
(▶ page 9-32)

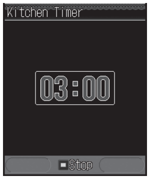
Kitchen Timer

Measuring Time

1 **Press [■]➡*Tools*➡[■]➡*Useful Tools*➡[■]➡*Kitchen Timer*➡[■]**

2 **Enter a countdown time➡[■]**

3 **Press [■]**



- Press [■] (Stop) during the count to temporarily stop the timer. To restart, press [■] (Start).

When Set Time is Over

The alarm sounds and External Light flashes.
To stop the alarm, press a key from [■], [0] to [9], [*], [#], [POWER], or [クリア/メモ]. Press [📷] when handset is closed.

9
Tools

S! Quick News

Check various pieces of the latest news delivered by information service providers and S! Loop items from Active Window by automatic updates recurring every period of time as you have specified.

Checking for Information Updates

Registering Contents

1 **Press ■ ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ■ ➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ■**

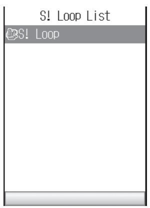


S! Quick News Window

2 **Select *News List* or *S! Loop List* ➡ ■**



News List Window



S! Loop List Window

3 **Select *Add News* or *S! Loop* ➡ ■ ➡ *YES* ➡ ■**

4 **Select contents ➡ ■**

- Follow the onscreen instructions to register contents.

Checking for Updates

1 **Select contents from News List Window or S! Loop List Window ➡ ■**

2 **Select the item to check ➡ ■**

- Press [シンプル] to check the previous update and [Y!] to check the next update.

More Features

Functions for S! Quick News

(▶ page 9-32)

Active Window Settings

(▶ page 13-8)

- Show All Information or Only Unread One
- Set Ticker Speed
- Show/Hide Images
- Restore Settings and Registered Contents of S! Quick News to Default

Browsing Updated Information

Subscribe to contents and receive automatic updates. Content updates are received during the night.

- Connection fees apply to use S! Information Channel.

Subscribing/Canceling Subscription

Access a special site to register or cancel transmission of information and select programs.

- Connection fees apply while you are connected to the Internet.

1 **Press ■ ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ■ ➡ *Info Channel* ➡ ■**



Info Channel Window

2 **Select *Reg./Cancel* ➡ ■ ➡ *YES* ➡ ■**

- Follow the onscreen instructions.

Checking Content Updates

1 **From Info Channel Window, select *What's new?* ➡ ■**

Checking from Information Prompt

1 **When Information Prompt appears ➡ *Info Channel* ➡ ■**

Using Weather Indicator

Weather Indicator posts the weather forecast in the current area in Standby. The indicator is updated automatically.

- A separate subscription is required to use Weather Indicator.

Checking Weather Forecast

1 **From Info Channel Window, select *Weather* ➡ ■**



Weather Indicator Menu

2 **Select *Weather* ➡ ■**

- You can view the weather forecast by selecting Weather Indicator and pressing ■ from Active Window (page 2-9).

More Features

S! Information Channel
(▶ page 9-33)

S! Information Channel Settings
(▶ page 13-43)

- Do Not Show Weather Indicator in Standby
- Set Notification of Weather Forecast Updates

9 Tools

Using BookSurfing®/e-Book Viewer

BookSurfing® and e-Book Viewer are viewers to view electronic comic books, electronic photo albums, electronic publications (novels, etc.), and other electronic books.
You can enlarge or reduce images, scroll the window with simple operations, and use sound, vibration, and other effects to enhance your reading experience.

- Some electronic books may require a content key for viewing.

Supported File Formats

BookSurfing®	CCF (.CCF)
e-Book Viewer	XMDF (.ZBK, .ZBF, .ZBS)

- Titles of unsupported file formats are not displayed.
- The viewer that starts up depends upon the file format. To find out the file format, check Details of the file (page 2-31).
- e-Book Viewer may not be able to display some PC contents.

1 **Press ■ ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ■**

2 **Select *BookSurfing* or *e-Book Viewer* ➡ ■**

- For the following operations, see BookSurfing® or e-Book Viewer help.

Scanning QR Codes

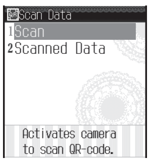
About QR Codes

Scan QR codes with handset camera, and save scanned data. Connect to Web pages, send messages or create Phone Book entries from scanned URLs or contact information.

- Dirty or dark QR codes may not be scanned.
- Some QR codes may not be scanned depending on the size or version.

Scanning a QR Code

1 **Press ■ ➡ *Tools* ➡ ■ ➡ *Useful Tools* ➡ ■ ➡ *Scan Data* ➡ ■**



Scan Data Window

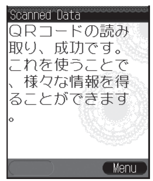
2 **Select *Scan* ➡ ■**



Scanning Window

3 **Frame a QR code in Display ➡ ■**

- Use ◀▶ to adjust the exposure.
- When the QR code is made up of several data areas, select ***YES*** to scan the other data areas. When all the areas are scanned, the QR code data is shown.



Scan Results Window

4 **Press Y! ➡ *Save* ➡ ■**

Checking Saved Data

1 **From Scan Data Window, select *Scanned Data* ➡ ■**

2 **Select QR code data ➡ ■**

More Features

Scanning QR Codes
(▶ page 9-33)

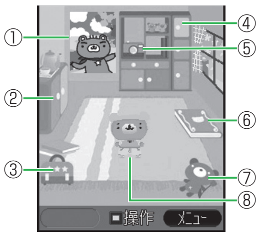
Opening Ku-man's Room

1 **Press ■➡エンタテイメント (Entertainment)➡■➡くーまんの部屋 (Ku-man's Room)➡■**

2 **Select 起動する (Open)➡■➡*YES* or *NO*➡■**

- You cannot open Ku-man's Room if the interface language is set to ***English***. Set ≣ 語選択 (Language) to ***日本語*** (Japanese).

About Ku-man's Room



Ku-man's Room

①**Poster**
Change posters.
②**Change Clothes**
Contains Ku-man's clothes.
③**Treasure Chest**
Contains Ku-man's treasures.
④**Closet**
It is decorated with many different types of trophies.
⑤**Take Pictures**
Take photos of Ku-man. You and Ku-man can appear in the same photo.
⑥**Album**
Albums with pictures of Ku-man.
⑦**Change!**
Standby Ku-man changes his outfit by putting on a plush toy.
⑧**Ku-man**
Ku-man is a foot-loose and fancy free baby star bear. He sometimes goes off on journeys.

Playing with Ku-man

Look in Ku-man's Treasure Chest, change the outfit of Ku-man in Standby or take photos.

Example: Changing the outfit of Ku-man in Standby

1 **In Ku-man's Room, press ■**
Now you can operate Ku-man's Room.

2 **Press [Mail key] (前へ (Previous))/[Yahoo key] (次へ (Next)) to select へんし～ん! (Change!)➡■**

3 **Select an outfit➡■**
- Ku-man in his room wears the clothes from before the change.

Checking Messages from Ku-man

Ku-man sends mail after you open his room for the first time, when he goes on trips and other times.
Sometimes there are presents attached to messages from Ku-man.

1 **In Ku-man's Room, press [Yahoo key]➡くーまんメール (Ku-man Mail)➡■**

2 **Select a message➡■**

More Features

Ku-man's Room (Japanese)
(► page 9-33)

Setting Ku-man for Standby (Japanese)
(► page 13-43)
- Set Ku-man to Appear in Standby

Information Management Tools

From ➡ Calendar Window page 9-4
Create Event Window page 9-4
Event Alarm Setting Window page 9-4
Daily View Window page 9-5
Event Details Window page 9-5
New Task Window page 9-5
Task Alarm Setting Window page 9-5
Tasks Window page 9-6

Functions for Calendar

Change Color of Calendar Dates [Set Holiday]

■Changing Color of a Date

Calendar Window Select a date➡ Y! ➡*Set Holiday*➡ ● ➡*Current Day*➡ ● ➡Select a color or *Deactivate*➡ ●

■Changing Color of a Day of the Week

Calendar Window Y! ➡*Set Holiday*➡ ● ➡*Select Week*➡ ● ➡Select a day of the week➡ ● ➡Select a color➡ ● ➡ ✉

Functions for Saving Events/Tasks

Set Alarm Tone [Alarm Tone]

Event Alarm Setting Window / Task Alarm Setting Window *Tone*➡ ●

■Setting a Preinstalled Sound

Patterns or *Melodies*➡ ● ➡Select an alarm tone➡ ● ➡ ✉ (twice)➡*OK*➡ ●

■Setting a File in Data Folder/Memory Card

Phone Memory or *Memory Card*➡ ● ➡Select a file➡ ● (twice)➡ ✉ (twice)➡*OK*➡ ●

■Setting Time Reader

Time Reading➡ ● ➡ ✉ (twice)➡*OK*➡ ●

Set Alarm Ring Time [Duration]

Event Alarm Setting Window / Task Alarm Setting Window *Duration*➡ ● ➡Enter a ring time➡ ● ➡ ✉ (twice)➡*OK*➡ ●

Notify of Events/Tasks for Today or Tomorrow at a Specified Time [Reminder]

Calendar Window / Tasks Window Y! ➡*Settings*➡ ● ➡*Reminder*➡ ● ➡*ON*➡ ● ➡*Time*➡ ● ➡Enter a time➡ ● ➡ ✉

- Enter a time in the 24-hour system.

■Setting Today/Tomorrow

Today➡ ● ➡*Today* or *Tomorrow*➡ ● ➡ ✉

■Setting a Preinstalled Alarm Tone

Set Alarm➡ ● ➡*Tone*➡ ● ➡*Patterns* or *Melodies*➡ ● ➡Select an alarm tone➡ ● ➡ ✉ (twice)

■Setting a File in Data Folder/Memory Card as Alarm Tone

Set Alarm➡ ● ➡*Tone*➡ ● ➡*Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*➡ ● ➡Select a file➡ ● (twice)➡ ✉ (twice)

■Setting Alarm Volume

Set Alarm➡ ● ➡*Volume*➡ ● ➡Set volume level➡ ● ➡ ✉ (twice)

■Setting Vibration

Set Alarm➡ ● ➡*Vibration*➡ ● ➡Select a vibration pattern➡ ● ➡ ✉ (twice)

■Setting Alarm Ring Time

Set Alarm➡■➡*Duration*➡■➡Enter a ring time➡■➡✉ (twice)

■Setting Alarm Repeats

Once➡■➡Select an item➡■➡✉

Hide Special Events/Tasks [Hide]

Create Event Window / New Task Window *Options*➡■➡*Show/Hide*➡■➡*Hide*➡■

Functions for Saving Events

Save Periodic Events [Repeat Setting]

Create Event Window *Options*➡■➡*Repeat for*➡■➡*Daily*, *Weekly*, *Monthly*, *Yearly* or *End of Month*➡■➡Enter a repeat duration➡■

- If you set a start date to the last day of a month, you can set *Repeat for* to *End of Month*.
- To repeat infinitely, enter "00".
- If you set *Monthly* for the 30th or 31st, the repetition is only set for months that include that date.
- If an event set to repeat daily, weekly, etc. is deleted, a message asks if you wish to cancel repeat features. Select *Do not Repeat* to delete the event for that day only.
- Canceling a single date of a periodic event may not be effective if the event is sent as vObject (page 2-33) and received by another device.

Edit a Saved Event [Edit Event]

Daily View Window Select an event➡Y!➡*Edit*➡■➡Select an item➡■➡Edit the item➡■➡✉➡*Overwrite* or *Save as New*➡■➡*OK*➡■

Functions for Saving Tasks

Edit a Saved Task [Edit Task]

Tasks Window Select a task➡Y!➡*Edit*➡■➡Select an item➡■➡Edit the item➡■➡✉➡*Overwrite* or *Save as New*➡■➡*OK*➡■

Functions for Checking/Managing Events

Use Event Information [Call/Create Message/Access URL]

■Calling or Sending a Message to a Phone Number

Event Details Window Select a phone number➡■ (twice)➡*Voice Call* or *Create Mail*➡■

- When you select *Voice Call*, do the following. Y!➡*Voice Call* or *Video Call*➡■

■Sending a Message to an E-mail Address

Event Details Window Select an e-mail address➡ ■ (twice)

■Connecting to a URL

Event Details Window Select a URL➡ ■ (twice)➡ *YES*➡ ■

Use Link Information of an Event [To Messages/To Screen Memo/To Pictures]

Event Details Window *To Messages*, *To Screen Memo* or *To Pictures*➡ ■

Use Information Stored in Contents [Call/Create Message/Save Sender/Access URL]

Event Details Window Select the *Contents* field➡ ■➡Select information➡ ■➡*Voice Call*, *Create Mail*, *Save Sender*, *By Yahoo! Keitai* or *By PC Browser*➡ ■

Delete Multiple Events [Select Multi]

Calendar Window TV➡Switch to All View➡ Y!➡ *Delete*➡ ■➡*Select Multi*➡ ■➡Select events➡ ■➡ ✉➡*YES*➡ ■

Delete All Events [Delete All]

Calendar Window Y!➡*Delete*➡ ■➡*All*➡ ■➡Enter Handset Code➡*YES*➡ ■

Functions for Checking/Managing Tasks

Use Task Information [Call/Create Message/Save Sender/Access URL]

Tasks Window Select a task➡ ■➡Select the *Contents* field➡ ■➡Select information➡ ■➡*Voice Call*, *Create Mail*, *Save Sender*, *By Yahoo! Keitai* or *By PC Browser*➡ ■

Delete Multiple Tasks [Select Multi]

Tasks Window Y!➡*Delete*➡ ■➡*Select Multi*➡ ■➡Select tasks➡ ■➡ ✉➡*YES*➡ ■

Delete All Tasks [Delete All]

Tasks Window Y!➡*Delete*➡ ■➡*All*➡ ■➡Enter Handset Code➡*YES*➡ ■

- When *Change View* is not set to *All View*, you cannot delete all tasks.

Time Table Functions

From ➡ Time Table Window page 9-7

Copy a Class on Time Table [Copy]

Time Table Window Select a period➡ Y!➡*Copy*➡ ■➡Select a destination period➡ ■➡ ✉

- To copy to multiple periods, repeat selecting a destination period and pressing ■ as many times as required.

Delete All Classes from Time Table [Delete All]

Time Table Window Y!➡*Delete*➡ ■➡*All*➡ ■➡Enter Handset Code➡*YES*➡ ■

Notepad Functions

From➡ Notepad List Window page 9-8

Edit a Notepad [Edit Notepad]

Notepad List Window Select a notepad with contents stored➡ ✉➡Edit the notepad➡ ■➡*YES*➡ ■

Delete All Notepads [Delete All]

Notepad List Window Y!➡*Delete*➡ ■➡*All*➡ ■➡Enter Handset Code➡*YES*➡ ■

Voice Recorder Functions

From ➡ Voice Recorder Window page 9-9

Change Storage Location of Recordings [Select Storage]

Voice Recorder Window ***Record***➡■➡Y!➡***SelectStorage***➡■➡***Phone Memory*** or ***Memory Card***➡■

- A memory card must be inserted to configure these settings.

Lifestyle Support Tools

Functions for Osaifu-Keitai®

From ➡ Card Settings Window page 9-12

Check Balance of a Lifestyle-Appli on External Display [Display Balance]

Card Settings Window ***Display Balance***➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡***ON/OFF***➡■➡***ON***➡■

■Adding a Lifestyle-Appli to Balance List

Card Settings Window ***Display Balance***➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡***Balance List***➡■➡***Empty***➡■➡Select a Lifestyle-Appli➡■

■Checking the Balance

- Side Key must be set to ***Balance*** in advance (page 2-4).

Press and hold 📷

- The balance is shown by each Lifestyle-Appli saved on Balance List. Pressing 📷 switches the balance display to the next Lifestyle-Appli.
- Alternatively, select a Lifestyle-Appli on Balance List and press ✉ to display the balance.

Delete Lifestyle-Appli from Balance List [Delete from Balance List]

Card Settings Window ***Display Balance***➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡***Balance List***➡■➡Select a Lifestyle-Appli

■Deleting One Entry

Y!➡***Delete***➡■➡***YES***➡■

■Deleting All Entries

Y!➡***Delete All***➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡***YES***➡■

Change Number of Calls to Activate Call Lock [Missed Count]

Card Settings Window ***Remote Lock***➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡***Call Lock***➡■➡***Missed Count***➡■➡Input a number of calls➡■

Set a Reply Address to Send Lock Engaged Notification [Address]

Card Settings Window ***Remote Lock***➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡***Mail Lock***➡■➡***Address***➡■➡Y!➡***Add***➡■

■Setting Mail Lock Address

To Sender➡■

■Setting an Address from Phone Book

Phone Book➡■➡Select an entry➡■➡Select an address➡■

■Setting an Address from Sent Log or Received Log

Sent Log or ***Received Log***➡■➡Select an entry➡■

■Directly Entering a Phone Number or E-mail Address

Phone Number or ***Email***➡■➡Enter a phone number or e-mail address➡■ (twice)

Functions for S! GPS Navi

From ➡ S! GPS Navi Window page 9-14

Send Current Position by Mail [Location Mail]

S! GPS Navi Window ***Location Mail***➡■

Check Location Logs [Location Logs]

S! GPS Navi Window ***Location Logs***➡■➡Select a log➡■

- If [icon] is shown to the left of the log, it means the positioning was successful; [icon] means a failure.

Use Location Logs [Open Map/Start Navi Appli/Send Message/To Locations/To Phone Book]

S! GPS Navi Window ***Location Logs***➡■➡Select a log➡[Y!]➡***Open Map***, ***Go to***, ***Location Mail***, ***To Locations*** or ***To Phone Book***➡■

Delete Location Logs [Delete/Delete All]

S! GPS Navi Window ***Location Logs***➡■➡Select a log➡[Y!]➡***Delete***➡■

■Deleting One Entry

Delete➡■➡***YES***➡■

■Deleting All Entries

Delete All➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡***YES***➡■

Save Location Information to My Locations [My Locations]

S! GPS Navi Window ***My Locations***➡■➡Select an empty item➡■➡Save location information➡■➡Enter a title➡■

Functions for Idokoro Mail

From ➡ Idokoro Mail Window page 9-16

Delete People from Recipients List [Delete/Delete All]

■Deleting One Entry

Idokoro Mail Window ***Recipients List***➡■➡Select an entry➡[Y!]➡***Delete***➡■➡***YES***➡■

■Deleting All Entries

Idokoro Mail Window ***Recipients List***➡■➡[Y!]➡***Delete All***➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡***YES***➡■

Delete Area Lists [Delete/Delete All]

■Deleting One Entry

Idokoro Mail Window ***Areas List***➡■➡Select an entry➡[Y!]➡***Delete***➡■➡***YES***➡■

■Deleting All Entries

Idokoro Mail Window ***Areas List***➡■➡[Y!]➡***Delete All***➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡***YES***➡■

Alarm Functions

From ➡ Alarm List Window page 9-18
Set Alarm Window page 9-18

Change an Alarm Name [Alarm Name]

Set Alarm Window Select an alarm name➡ ■ ➡ Enter an alarm name➡ ■ ➡ ✉ ➡ ***OK***➡ ■

Change Alarm Tone [Alarm Tone]

Set Alarm Window ***Alarm Tone***➡ ■ ➡ ***Tone***➡ ■

■**Setting Time Reader**

Time Reading➡ ■ ➡ ✉ (twice) ➡ ***OK***➡ ■

■**Setting a Preinstalled Sound**

Patterns or ***Melodies*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select an alarm tone➡ ■ ➡ ✉ (twice) ➡ ***OK***➡ ■

■**Setting a File in Data Folder/Memory Card**

Phone Memory or ***Memory Card***➡ ■ ➡ Select a file➡ ■ (twice) ➡ ✉ (twice) ➡ ***OK***➡ ■

Change Alarm Ring Time [Duration]

Set Alarm Window ***Alarm Tone***➡ ■ ➡ ***Duration*** ➡ ■ ➡ Enter a ring time➡ ■ ➡ ✉ (twice)➡ ***OK***➡ ■

Edit an Alarm [Edit Alarm]

Alarm List Window Select an alarm➡ ■ ➡ Select an item➡ ■ ➡ Edit the item➡ ■ ➡ ✉ ➡ ***OK*** ➡ ■

Delete All Alarms [Reset All]

Alarm List Window Y! ➡ ***Reset All***➡ ■ ➡ Enter Handset Code➡ ***YES***➡ ■

World Clock Functions

From ➡ World Clock Setting Window page 9-19

Edit a City Name [Rename City]

World Clock Setting Window ***City 1*** or ***City 2***➡ ■ ➡ ◀▶ to select a city➡ Y! ➡ ***Rename City***➡ ■ ➡ Enter a city name➡ ■

Functions for Calculator

From ➡ Calculator Window page 9-20

Calculate Currency Conversion [Converter]

Calculator Window Y! ➡ ***Converter*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Exchange Rate***➡ ■ ➡ ***Main Currency*** or ***Sub Currency*** ➡ ■ ➡ Enter a rate➡ ■ ➡ クリア/メモ (three times)➡ Enter an amount➡ Y! ➡ ***Converter*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***To Main*** or ***To Sub*** ➡ ■

Functions for S! Quick News

From ➡ S! Quick News Window page 9-22
News List Window page 9-22
S! Loop List Window page 9-22

Update Lists Automatically [Auto Refresh]

S! Quick News Window ***Settings*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Auto Refresh***➡ ■ ➡ ***Flash News***, ***News*** or ***S! Loop*** ➡ ■

■**Setting Flash News to Update Automatically**

Select a time interval for automatic updates ➡ ■ ➡ ▼ ➡ ■ ➡ ***YES***➡ ■

9 Tools

■Setting News/S! Loop to Update Automatically

Automatic ➡■➡□➡■➡*YES*➡■

- S! Quick News (Flash News) and S! Loop List updates do not take place during late hours at night.
- Automatic updates may not occur if handset is outside the service area or signal reception is poor.
- If automatic updates stop for some reason, performing a manual update (page 2-9) can restart the automatic updates.
- Automatic updates are unavailable while using handset abroad.

Delete Registered Contents and Items [Delete/Delete All]

■Deleting One Entry

News List Window / S! Loop List Window ✉➡*Delete* ➡■➡*One*➡■➡*YES*➡■

■Deleting All Entries

News List Window / S! Loop List Window ✉➡*Delete* ➡■➡*All*➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡*YES* ➡■

S! Information Channel

From ➡ Info Channel Window page 9-23
Weather Indicator Menu page 9-23

Download Unreceived Information [Get Latest]

Info Channel Window *Get Latest*➡■➡*YES*➡■

A connection is established to the redelivery page.

- You can download only the latest information. Content cannot be downloaded on non-delivery days.

■Requesting Redelivery from Information Prompt

Information Prompt appears➡*Info Channel*➡■➡*YES*➡■

Check Past Updates [History]

Info Channel Window *History*➡■➡Select information➡■

Update Weather Forecast Manually [Update Weather Forecast]

Weather Indicator Menu *Update*➡■➡*YES*➡■

Scanning QR Codes

From ➡ Scan Results Window page 9-25

Use Scanned Data [Call/Send Message/To Phone Book/ Access URL]

Scan Results Window Select information➡■➡ *Call*, *Send Message* or *To Phone Book*➡■

- When a URL is scanned, select *YES* after selecting a URL.

Paste Scanned Data into Message Text [To Message]

Scan Results Window ✉➡*To Message*➡■

Use Location Information [Start Navi Appli/To Locations]

Scan Results Window ✉➡*Go to* or *To Locations* ➡■

Ku-man's Room (Japanese)

From ➡ Ku-man's Room page 9-26

Check What You can Do in Ku-man's Room [Help]

Ku-man's Room ✉➡ヘルプ (Help)➡■

10 Communication Services

S! Town (Japanese)/S! Loop (Japanese)

Using S! Town

S! Town is an online 3D virtual space. Go online to chat, shop, etc.

- When you use S! Town for the first time, a user registration (free) and profile registration are required. Please read and agree to the terms of service before the registration.
- Connection fees apply to use S! Town. The fees may be expensive.
- If you subscribe to Website access restrictions, you cannot use S! Town.

1 Press ■ ➡ *Communications* ➡ ■

2 Select *S! Town* ➡ ■

- You can cancel S! Town service by selecting ***S!ﾀｳﾝ*** (S! Town) from ***ﾏｲﾒﾆｭｰ*** (My Menu) of Yahoo! Keitai.
- Upgrade notification may appear when you start S! Town. Follow the onscreen instructions to upgrade S! Town.

- **About Library**
  Downloaded S! Appli that expand the functions of S! Town are automatically stored in Library. To check S! Appli in Library: Press ■ ➡ ***Communications*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***S! Town*** ➡ [key] (Libr.)

Using S! Loop

Use S! Loop to keep a diary on the web or exchange information via BBS.

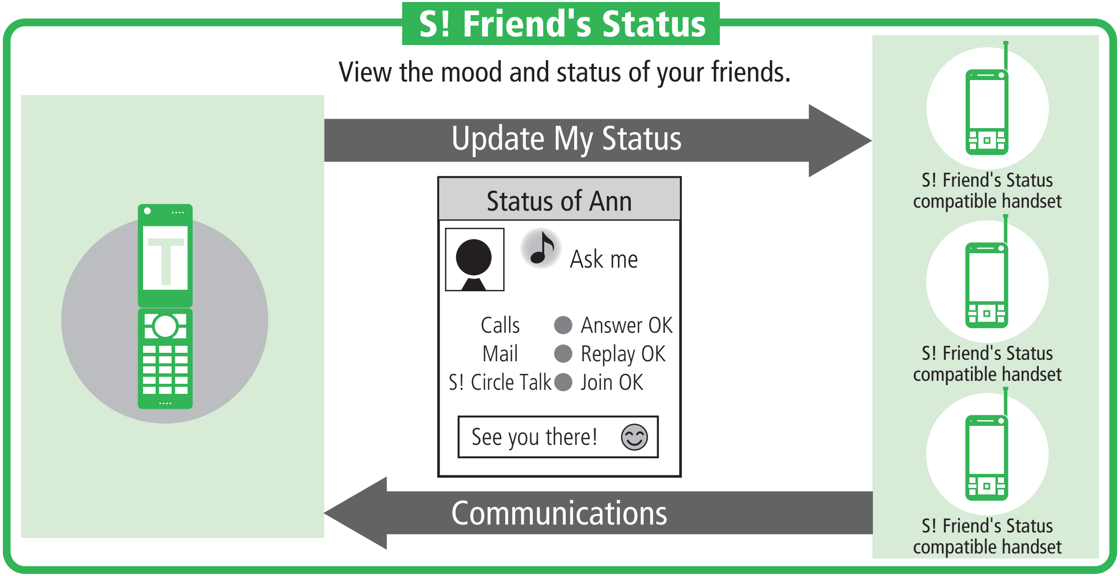
1 Press ■ ➡ *Communications* ➡ ■

2 Select *S! Loop* ➡ ■ ➡ *YES* ➡ ■

About S! Friend's Status

Share your current mood and availability to receive calls, messages or S! Circle Talk calls with your friends who are on your S! Friend's Status Members List.
It is possible to check statuses of your S! Friend's Status members from Standby after adding them to Active Window.

- A separate subscription and fees are required to use S! Friend's Status.



- S! Friend's Status is unavailable if IP Service is set to ***OFF***.
- S! Friend's Status is unavailable while using handset abroad.

Using S! Friend's Status

Setting Your Own Status (My Status)

1 **Press and hold** [X 絵]



My Status Window

- You can set My Status from Active Window (page 2-8).
- When My Status is offline, switch to online by selecting ***YES*** in the confirmation window.
- To go offline:
  Select Online ➡ ■ ➡ ***Offline*** ➡ ■ ➡ [✉] (Update)

2 **Select a status such as ごきげん (Good mood) ➡ ■ ➡ Select an item ➡ ■**

3 **Select an Answer Status ➡ ■ ➡ Select an item ➡ ■**

- To change all your Answer Statuses at once:
  Press [Y!] (All) ➡ Select an item ➡ ■ ➡ Check the settings ➡ ■
- To customize All Answer Statuses Settings:
  Press [Y!] (All) ➡ ***Customize*** ➡ ■ ➡ [✉] (Edit) ➡ Customize the settings ➡ [✉] (Save) ➡ ■

4 **Select the Comment field ➡ ■ ➡ Enter a comment ➡ ■**

5 **Press [✉] (Update)**

- If you switch to offline, you and other people cannot check each others' current statuses. Also, you cannot create S! Friend's Status Members List or initiate S! Circle Talk.

Adding Members

When you add a person to your S! Friend's Status Members List, an invitation is sent.

- You can only add friends who have a SoftBank handset that supports S! Friend's Status to your S! Friend's Status Members List.
- To create S! Friend's Status Members List, set My Status to ***Online***.
- When the person accepts your invitation, you receive a Saving Completed notification, and you and the person can check out each other's status.

1 **Press ■ ➡ *Communications* ➡ ■ ➡ *Friend Status* ➡ ■**

2 **Press [✉] (Add) ➡ *Phone Book* or *Direct Input* ➡ ■**

- If you select ***Phone Book***, you can search Phone Book entries on handset (not those on USIM Card or memory card).

3 **Select a member or enter a phone number ➡ ■**

- To select a group:
  Select Gr ➡ ■ ➡ Select a group ➡ ■

4 **Press [✉] (Save) ➡ *YES* ➡ ■**

A Saving Request notification is sent to the person, and ***Waiting*** appears in S! Friend's Status Members List Window.

Communication Services

10

- You will receive a Saving Failed notification when the other person's S! Friend's Status Members List already contains 30 people.

Adding a Member from Saving Request

If someone wants to add you to his/her S! Friend's Status Members List, you will receive a Saving Request notification. If you accept, the other person is saved to S! Friend's Status Members List and you and the person can check out each other's status.

1 **Information Prompt appears➡** ***Notification***➡■

2 **Select a Saving Request notification➡** ■➡***YES***➡■

- If you select ***NO***, a Saving Failed notification is returned to the other person and the person is not saved to S! Friend's Status Members List.

- If you select ***NO*** and a Saving Failed notification is returned to the other person, you cannot send the person an invitation to S! Friend's Status Members List for 24 hours.
- Although you select ***NO*** and a Saving Failed notification is returned to the other person, if the person does not receive the notification because he/she is outside the service area or offline for more than 24 hours, you will receive another Saving Request notification when the person comes online.

Checking a Member's Status

1 **Press** ■➡***Communications***➡■➡ ***Friend Status***➡■



S! Friend's Status Members List Window

2 **Use** ◐ **to select a group**

3 **Use** ◎ **to select a member➡**■



S! Friend's Status Details Window

More Features

S! Friend's Status Functions
(▶ page 10-9)

Settings for S! Friend's Status
(▶ page 13-44)

- Edit Status Settings of My Status
- Save Members to Active Window
- Ignore Saving Requests from People Not in Phone Book
- Ignore All Saving Requests

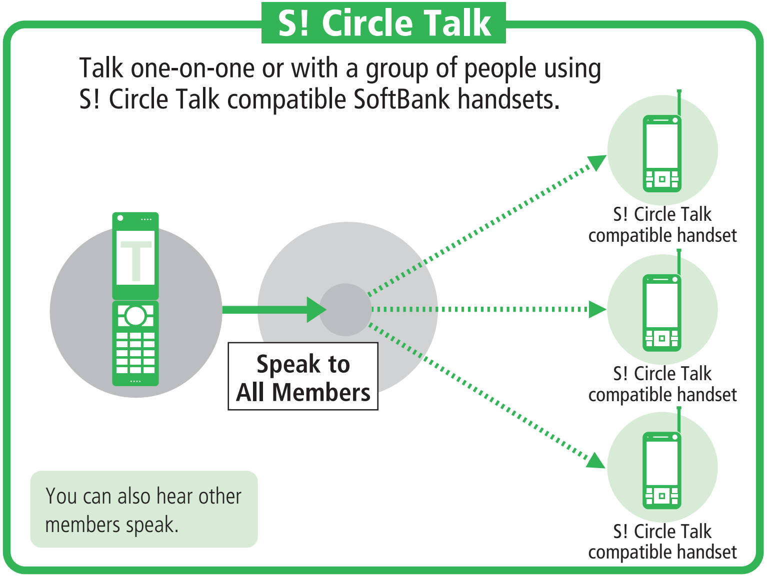
Settings for S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk
(▶ page 13-44)

- Disable S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk

About S! Circle Talk

S! Circle Talk is a walkie-talkie style communication service. Talk one-on-one or with a group of people (up to ten people) using S! Circle Talk compatible SoftBank handsets.
Press and hold the key to talk (one person at a time) and release the key when finished talking. Check each participant's status and see who is currently talking in S! Circle Talk window.

- You must subscribe to S! Friend's Status to use S! Circle Talk. Connection fees apply for using S! Circle Talk.



- S! Circle Talk is unavailable if IP Service is set to ***OFF***.
- S! Circle Talk is unavailable if S! Friend's Status is set to ***Offline***. Switch to ***Online*** (page 10-4) to use S! Circle Talk.
- S! Circle Talk is unavailable during a voice call or Video Call. Also, you cannot receive another S! Circle Talk call during S! Circle Talk.
- S! Circle Talk is unavailable while using handset abroad.

Using S! Circle Talk

Adding Members

Adding a Person

1 **Press ■ ➡ *Communications* ➡ ■ ➡ *Circle Talk* ➡ ■**

- A confirmation window appears the first time you start.

2 **Press [Y!] ➡ *Add Members* ➡ ■**

- If no one is on S! Circle Talk Members List, press [✉] (Add).



Add Members Menu

3 **Select *Personal* ➡ ■ ➡ *Phone Book*, *Friend Status* or *Direct Input* ➡ ■**

- If you select ***Phone Book***, you can search Phone Book entries on handset (not those on USIM Card or memory card).

4 **Select a member or enter a phone number ➡ ■**

Creating a Group

Organize entries by group and make an S! Circle Talk call to a group of people.

1 **From Add Members Menu, select *Group* ➡ ■ ➡ *Create New* ➡ ■**

2 **Select *Empty* ➡ ■ ➡ *Phone Book*, *Friend Status* or *Direct Input* ➡ ■**

- If you select ***Phone Book***, you can search Phone Book entries on handset (not those on USIM Card or memory card).

3 **Select a member or enter a phone number ➡ ■**

- To save more members, repeat **2** and **3**.
- If you want to change a member's phone number, select a member and press ■ twice.

4 **Press [✉] (Add) ➡ Enter a group name ➡ ■**

Adding a Group from S! Friend's Status Members List

- Save members other than yourself to an S! Friend's Status group in advance.

1 **From Add Members Menu, select *Group* ➡ ■ ➡ *Friend Status* ➡ ■**

2 **Select a group ➡ ■**

Initiating S! Circle Talk

1 **Enter a phone number, and then press and hold [📷]**

- To call from S! Circle Talk Members List: Press ■ ➡ ***Communications*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Circle Talk*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select a member or group ➡ [✉] (CT)/[📷]



2 **Press and hold [📷] to talk**

- Talk when ***Myself*** appears.
- Initiator can talk as soon as S! Circle Talk is connected.
- ***Myself*** disappears after 30 seconds and the floor is released.
- Only one person can talk at a time.

3 **To sign off, press [POWER] ➡ *YES* ➡ ■**

- When only one person remains, S! Circle Talk ends automatically.

Communication Services

10

Joining S! Circle Talk

1 Press ■ (Answer) when S! Circle Talk invitation arrives

S! Circle Talk is connected.

- To reject the connection, press Y! (Reject).
- Alternatively, press ✓ or 📷 to answer.

S! Circle Talk Operations

Calling Another Member

1 During S! Circle Talk, press Y!➡*Add* ➡■

2 Select *Members List*➡■➡Select a member ➡■

- To call a person from S! Friend's Status Members List:
  Select ***Friend Status***➡■➡Select an entry➡■
- To call a person from Phone Book:
  Select ***Phone Book***➡■➡Select an entry➡■➡Select a phone number ➡■
- To enter a phone number directly:
  Select ***Direct Input***➡■➡Enter a phone number➡■

Adjusting Speaker (Earpiece) Volume

1 During S! Circle Talk, use ⬍

Toggling Audio Output (Earpiece/Speaker)

1 During S! Circle Talk, press ✉ (🔊 / 🔇)

More Features

S! Circle Talk Functions

(▶ page 10-10)

Settings for S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk

(▶ page 13-44)

- Disable S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk

Communications

S! Friend's Status Functions

From ➡
S! Friend's Status Members List Window page 10-5
S! Friend's Status Details Window page 10-5

Add a Member
[Add Members]

S! Friend's Status Members List Window Select a member other than yourself (My Status)➡[Y!]➡*Add Members*➡[●]

- See "Adding Members" (page 10-4) for following operations.

Delete Members
[Deletion Request]

S! Friend's Status Members List Window Select a group

■Deleting One Member

Select a member➡[Y!]➡*Delete*➡[●]➡*One*➡[●]➡*YES*➡[●]

■Deleting Multiple Members

Select a member other than yourself (My Status)➡[Y!]➡*Delete*➡[●]➡*Select Multi*➡[●]➡Select members➡[●]➡[✉]➡*YES*➡[●]

■Deleting All Members

Select a member other than yourself (My Status)➡[Y!]➡*Delete*➡[●]➡*All*➡[●]➡Enter Handset Code➡*YES*➡[●]

- After a member is deleted from S! Friend's Status Members List, you cannot send/receive a Saving Request notification to/from that person for 24 hours.

Move Members to a Different Group
[Change Group]

S! Friend's Status Members List Window Select a group

■Moving One Member

Select a member ➡[Y!]➡*Change Group*➡[●]➡*One*➡[●]➡Select a group➡[●]

■Moving Multiple Members

Select a member other than yourself (My Status)➡[Y!]➡*Change Group*➡[●]➡*Select Multi*➡[●]➡Select members➡[●]➡[✉]➡Select a group➡[●]

■Moving All Members

Select a member other than yourself (My Status)➡[Y!]➡*Change Group*➡[●]➡*All*➡[●]➡Select a group➡[●]

Edit a Group Name
[Rename]

S! Friend's Status Members List Window Select a group➡[Y!]➡*Rename*➡[●]➡Edit the group name➡[●]

Update S! Friend's Status Manually
[Status Update]

S! Friend's Status Members List Window [Y!]➡*Settings*➡[●]➡*Status Update*➡[●]

Check a Notification
[Notification]

S! Friend's Status Members List Window [Y!]➡*Notification*➡[●]

Contact a Member According to His/Her Current Status
[Call/Send Mail]

■Making a Voice Call/Video Call

S! Friend's Status Details Window Select the call answer status➡[●]➡[Y!]➡*Voice Call* or *Video Call*➡[●]

■Sending a Message

S! Friend's Status Details Window Select the mail answer status➡[●]➡Create a message ➡[✉]

- For details on creating messages, see pages 4-4 and 4-6.

■Initiating S! Circle Talk

S! Friend's Status Details Window Select the S! Circle Talk answer status➡■

S! Circle Talk Functions

Edit S! Circle Talk Members List [Edit Group]

■➡*Communications*➡■➡*Circle Talk*➡■➡Select a group➡Y!➡*Edit Group*➡■

■Editing Group Name

Rename➡■➡Edit the group name➡■

■Adding Members

Change Member➡■➡*Empty*➡■➡*Phone Book*, *Friend Status* or *Direct Input*➡■➡Select a member or enter a phone number➡■➡シンプル

■Changing a Member's Phone Number

Change Member➡■➡Select a member➡■ (twice)➡Enter a phone number➡■➡シンプル

■Deleting a Member

Change Member➡■➡Select a member➡Y!➡*Delete*➡■➡*YES*➡■➡シンプル

■Deleting All Members

Change Member➡■➡Y!➡*Delete All*➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡*YES*➡■

Delete a Group or Person from S! Circle Talk Members List [Delete/Select Multi/Delete All]

■➡*Communications*➡■➡*Circle Talk*➡■

■Deleting One Entry

Select a member or a group➡Y!➡*Delete*➡■➡*One*➡■➡*YES*➡■

■Deleting Multiple Entries

Y!➡*Delete*➡■➡*Select Multi*➡■➡Select members or groups➡■➡シンプル➡*YES*➡■

■Deleting All Entries

Y!➡*Delete*➡■➡*All*➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡*YES*➡■

11 Security

Changing Handset Code

- Do not forget your Handset Code and do not reveal it to others. Write down your Handset Code.

1 **Press ■ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Security* ➡ ■ ➡ *Change Password* ➡ ■**



2 **Enter current Handset Code**



3 **Enter new Handset Code**



4 **Re-enter new Handset Code for confirmation**

Prohibiting/Limiting Use

Activating PIN Settings

Set to require PIN entry to use handset when handset is turned on with USIM Card inserted in it.

1 Press ■ → ***Settings*** → ■ → ***Security*** → ■



Security Setting Window

2 Select ***PIN Settings*** → ■ → ***ON/OFF*** → ■ → ***ON*** → ■

3 Enter PIN → ■

Prohibiting Handset Use

Set Password Lock to prevent others from using your handset. When Password Lock is activated, Handset Code entry is required to use handset.

1 From Security Setting Window, select ***Password Lock*** → ■ → **Enter Handset Code**



2 Select an item → ■ → ***ON*** → ■

- Phone Closed: Locks handset when you close it.
- Power Saving: Locks handset when Display is turned off for Power Saving.
- Power Off: Locks handset when it is turned on.

- To cancel Password Lock, enter Handset Code to unlock it temporarily, and then set Password Lock to ***OFF***.
- ***Phone Closed*** locks handset when you close it in Standby. ***Power Saving*** locks handset when Display is turned off after a certain period of time (as set in the power saving settings) has passed in Standby.
- You cannot make one-touch calls from Earphone-Microphone when Password Lock is activated.

Keypad Lock

Disable all keys to prevent unintentional operations while your handset is in your bag or pocket.

1 Press and hold ■

- To cancel Keypad Lock, press and hold ■ while it is set.

- Keypad Lock cannot be set when Bluetooth®/infrared communication is activated.
- When Keypad Lock is set, Information Prompt does not appear.

Using Secure Remote Lock

By using Secure Remote Lock service, if your handset is lost or stolen, you can lock handset functions remotely from a PC or mobile phone. Once the lock is set, all key operations are disabled except for turning the power on, making emergency calls and calling SoftBank Customer Center (157).
IC Card Lock (page 9-12) will also be turned on automatically.
For more information on conditions for using Secure Remote Lock, go to http://www.softbank.jp or access My SoftBank from handset.

Accessing My SoftBank from a Mobile Phone

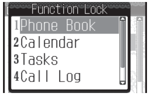
1 **Press [✉]→ﾒﾆｭｰﾘｽﾄ(Menu List)→[■]→ *My SoftBank*→[■]**

Protecting Handset Information

Prohibiting Use of Phone Book and Other Features

Set Function Lock to prevent unauthorized access to Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks, Call Log and Sent/Received Log. When Function Lock is set, Handset Code must be entered to access these functions/features.

1 **From Security Setting Window, select *Function Lock*→[■]→Enter Handset Code**



2 **Select a function →[■]→*Lock*→[■]**

Viewing Secret Data

Phone Book entries saved as secret (page 2-18) can be viewed.

1 **From Security Setting Window, select *Secret Mode*→[■]→Enter Handset Code**



2 **Select *Show* →[■]**

- Secret Mode is set to ***Hide*** when handset is turned off.

More Features

Functions for Prohibiting/Limiting Use
(▶ page 11-5)

Security
11

Security

Functions for Prohibiting/Limiting Use

From ➡ Security Setting Window page 11-3

Change PIN/PIN2

[Change PIN/PIN2]

- Set PIN Settings to ***ON*** before you change PIN.
- Do not forget your PIN and do not reveal it to others. Write down your PIN.

Security Setting Window ***PIN Settings***➡■➡***Change PIN*** or ***Change PIN2***➡■➡Enter current PIN/PIN2➡■➡Enter new PIN/PIN2➡■➡Re-enter new PIN/PIN2 for confirmation➡■

Cancel PIN Lock

[Cancel PIN Lock]

While PIN/PIN2 Lock is set, do an operation that requires PIN/PIN2 entry➡Enter PUK/PUK2 ➡■➡Enter new PIN/PIN2➡■➡Re-enter new PIN/PIN2 for confirmation ➡■

- If Personal Unblocking Key (PUK) is incorrectly entered ten times in a row, USIM Card is locked (USIM lock). If USIM lock is set, it cannot be canceled. Contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-48).

Restrict Access to the Internet by Inputting URLs

[Web]

Security Setting Window ***Restricted Mode***➡■➡***Web***➡■➡Enter Internet Security Code (page 1-16) ➡■➡***Set Regulation***➡■➡***ON***➡■

■When Internet Security Code is Not Registered

Security Setting Window ***Restricted Mode***➡■➡***Web***➡■ (twice)➡Enter Internet Security Code ➡■➡Re-enter Internet Security Code for confirmation ➡■➡***Do not Save***➡■

- To register a clue to your Internet Security Code, select ***Save*** and enter a clue.

■Changing Internet Security Code

Security Setting Window ***Restricted Mode***➡■➡***Web***➡■➡Enter Internet Security Code➡■➡***Change Password*** ➡■ (twice)➡Enter new Internet Security Code➡■➡Re-enter new Internet Security Code for confirmation ➡■➡***Do not Save***➡■

- To register a clue to your Internet Security Code, select ***Save*** and enter a clue.

12 File Transfer/Backup

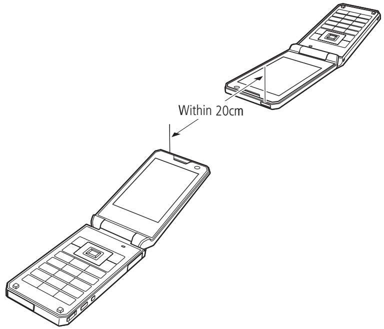
Infrared

About Infrared

Send/receive Phone Book entries, events, pictures taken with the camera and other data to/from other infrared compatible devices (PCs, handsets).

Precautions

- A dirty Infrared Port may cause an infrared communication failure. If Infrared Port is dirty, gently wipe it with a soft cloth while making sure not to scratch the port.
- Do not move the devices until the file transfer is complete.
- Direct sunlight or fluorescent light may interfere with infrared communication.
- If a voice call/Video Call arrives while handset is sending/receiving files via infrared, the fixed incoming image appears and the fixed pattern ringtone sounds. If you answer the call, file transfer is canceled.
- When sending/receiving vObjects, some information may be altered or may not be received.
- You cannot use Bluetooth® communication or USB functions other than the charge function during infrared communication.
- S! Friend's Status and S! Circle Talk are unavailable while transferring files even if IP Service is set to ***ON***.
- Bring Infrared Port of handset to within 20 cm of the infrared port of the destination device and align both ports. Make sure no objects are placed between them.



Authentication Password

The authentication password (four digits) is for sending and receiving all data by infrared communication.
When sending or receiving all data, the same authentication password needs to be entered on both sending and receiving devices.

Using Infrared

Activating Infrared

Set handset so that it can be connected to other compatible devices via infrared.

1 Press ■ ➡ ***Settings*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Connectivity*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Infrared*** ➡ ■



Infrared Menu

2 Select ***ON/OFF*** ➡ ■

3 Select ***ON*** ➡ ■

- To cancel infrared standby status, select ***OFF***.

- Infrared communication is unavailable when Offline Mode is set to ***ON***.
- If handset does not communicate via infrared in three minutes after Infrared has been set to ***ON***, the infrared standby status is canceled automatically.

Transferring Files

Sending a File

1 Access a function that supports infrared

2 **Select a file ➡ [✉] ➡ *Send* ➡ [■]**

- Select ***Send vCard*** to access from Phone Book.

3 **Select *Via Infrared* ➡ [■]**

- Files without transfer permission and Screen Memo files cannot be sent.
- Removal of memory card during file transfer from memory card may result in loss or damage of files on memory card.

Receiving Files

Handset can receive files when the Infrared setting is ***ON***.

1 **In Standby, receive a connection request**

2 **Select *YES* ➡ [■]**

- To reject reception of files, select ***NO***.
- When handset receives a Phone Book entry, event, task or notepad, select ***YES*** to save it to your Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks or Notepad.

3 **Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ [■]**

- Handset cannot receive files except in Standby.

Sending All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All Phone Book entries on handset, events on Calendar and tasks can be sent to other infrared compatible handsets. Enter the same authentication password on both sending and receiving devices.

1 **From Infrared Menu, select *Transfer All* ➡ [■]**

2 **Enter Handset Code**

3 **Select *Phone Book* or *Cal./Tasks* ➡ [■]**

- When sending Phone Book entries, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to send images saved in Phone Book. Select ***Without Image*** to send Phone Book entries without images.
- When sending events/tasks, a confirmation window appears. Select ***Without Past*** not to send past events/tasks.

4 **Enter the authentication password**

Receiving All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All Phone Book entries, events on Calendar and tasks can be received from other infrared compatible handsets. Enter the same authentication password on both sending and receiving devices.
Handset can receive files when the Infrared setting is ***ON***.

1 **In Standby, receive a connection request**

2 **Enter Handset Code ➡ Enter the authentication password**

3 **Select *Add* ➡ [■]**

- To overwrite all files:
  Select ***Overwrite*** ➡ [■] ➡ ***YES*** ➡ [■]
- To cancel receiving files, select ***Discard***.

- Handset cannot receive files except in Standby.

More Features

Functions for Infrared Communication
(▶ page 12-14)

About Bluetooth®

Transfer Phone Book entries, events and other files in Data Folder between handset and other Bluetooth® compatible devices (PCs, etc.). Also use a handsfree compatible device to make handsfree calls.

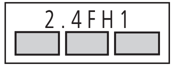
Frequency

The Bluetooth® system on handset uses the 2.4 GHz spectrum ranging from 2.402 GHz to 2.480 GHz. Other wireless devices may be using the same frequency. In order to avoid radio interference, note the followings:

- The Bluetooth® system on handset uses 2.4 GHz spectrum. This spectrum is used by industrial, scientific, and medical equipment (microwaves etc.), other radio stations of the same kind, premises radio stations for radio frequency identification which require a license (used in production lines etc.), license free specified low power radio stations, and amateur radio stations (hereafter "other radio stations").

1. Before using handset, make sure there are no other radio stations nearby.
2. If radio interference occurs between handset and other radio stations, change locations to use handset, or stop using handset (stop emitting radio waves) at once.
3. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-48).

- **Handset**



This wireless device uses 2.4 GHz spectrum. It employs FH-SS modulation, and causes interference within a 10-meter radius.

Precautions

- Communication tests have not been performed for all Bluetooth® compatible devices. There is no guarantee of connection with all Bluetooth® devices.
- The security function used for wireless communication complies with the standard specifications of Bluetooth®. However, take care when using Bluetooth® for data communication because, in some cases, security may be inadequate depending on the operating environment and configuration.
- SoftBank accepts no liability whatsoever for any data generated or information leaked during Bluetooth® communication.
- If a voice call/Video Call arrives while handset is sending/receiving files by Bluetooth® connection, the fixed incoming image appears and the fixed melody ringtone sounds. If you answer the call, file transfer is canceled.
- When sending/receiving vObjects, some information may be altered or may not be received.
- You cannot use infrared communication and USB functions other than the charge function during Bluetooth® communication.
- S! Friend's Status and S! Circle Talk are unavailable while transferring files even if IP Service is set to ***ON***.
- The Bluetooth® system on handset has been certified to comply only with specifications of Japanese Radio Law. Using Bluetooth® features outside Japan may be punishable by law.

Authentication PIN Code

Authentication PIN code (Bluetooth Passkey) is a 4 to 16 digit number required to connect to a compatible device. Code must be entered on both devices before connection is established.

- You can set a different authentication PIN code on each device.

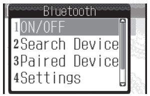
Using Bluetooth®

Use Bluetooth® to connect handset to other compatible devices. Transfer files and make dial-up connections.

Activating Bluetooth®

Set handset so that it can be connected to other compatible devices via Bluetooth® communication.

1 Press ■ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Connectivity* ➡ ■ ➡ *Bluetooth* ➡ ■



Bluetooth Menu

2 Select *ON/OFF* ➡ ■

3 Select *ON* ➡ ■

- To cancel Bluetooth® standby status, select ***OFF***.

- Bluetooth® communication is unavailable when Offline Mode is set to ***ON***.

Connecting to Bluetooth® Devices

Finding and Pairing with a Device

Before establishing a Bluetooth® connection, you need to search for, find and then pair with a Bluetooth® compatible device.

1 From Bluetooth Menu, select *Search Device* ➡ ■

Handset starts searching for Bluetooth® devices and then the names and icons of available devices appear.

- The device type icons are as follows:

PC	Audio device
Mobile phone	Peripherals
LAN	Printer
Headset	Other device
Handsfree device	

2 Select a device ➡ ■ ➡ Enter an authentication PIN code ➡ ■ ➡ *YES* or *NO* ➡ ■

When handset is connected to another Bluetooth® compatible device, the device is registered in the paired device list.

- Enter the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) on handset and the Bluetooth® compatible device.

- An authentication PIN code needs to be entered within approximately 30 seconds for security reasons.

Connecting to a Paired Handsfree Device

1 From Bluetooth Menu, select *Paired Device* ➡ ■



Paired Device List Window

2 Select a handsfree device ➡ Y!

- If a handsfree device is not registered, press ✉ (Search) and select a handsfree device to register it to the paired device list.

3 Select *Connect* ➡ ■

Transferring Files

Sending a File

1 **Access a function that supports Bluetooth®**

2 **Select a file➡[Y!]➡*Send*➡[■]**

- Select ***Send vCard*** to access from Phone Book.

3 **Select *Via Bluetooth*➡[■]**

4 **From Paired Device List Window, select a device➡[■]**

- If a receiving device is not registered, select [Search icon] (Search) and then select a receiving device.

- Files without transfer permission and Screen Memo files cannot be sent.
- Removal of memory card during file transfer from memory card may result in loss or damage of files on memory card.

Receiving Files

Handset can receive files when the Bluetooth setting is ***ON***.

1 **In Standby, receive a connection request➡*YES*➡[■]**

- If the device information of handset is not registered on the sending device, the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) entry window appears. Enter the same authentication PIN code on handset and the Bluetooth® compatible device.

2 **Select *YES*➡[■]**

- To reject reception of files, select ***NO***.
- When handset receives a Phone Book entry, event, task or notepad, select ***YES*** to save it to your Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks or Notepad.

3 **Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡[■]**

- Handset cannot receive files except in Standby.

Sending All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All Phone Book entries on handset, events on Calendar or tasks can be sent to other Bluetooth® compatible handsets.

1 **From Bluetooth Menu, select *Transfer All*➡[■]**

2 **Enter Handset Code**

3 **Select *Phone Book* or *Cal./Tasks*➡[■]**

- When sending Phone Book entries, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to send images saved in Phone Book. Select ***Without Image*** to send Phone Book entries without images.
- When sending events/tasks, a confirmation window appears. Select ***Without Past*** not to send past events/tasks.

4 **Select a receiving device➡[■]**

- If a receiving device is not registered, select [Search icon] (Search) and then select a receiving device.
- Enter the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) on handset and the Bluetooth® compatible device.

Receiving All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All Phone Book entries, events on Calendar or tasks can be received from another Bluetooth® compatible handset.
Handset can receive files when the Bluetooth setting is ***ON***.

1 **In Standby, receive a connection request➡*YES*➡■**

- If the device information of handset is not registered on the sending device, the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) entry window appears. Enter the same authentication PIN code on handset and the Bluetooth® compatible device.

2 **Select *Add*➡■**

- To overwrite all files:
  Select ***Overwrite***➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡***YES***➡■
- To cancel receiving files, select ***Discard***.

- Handset cannot receive files except in Standby.

More Features

Functions for Bluetooth® Communication
(▶ page 12-14)

Settings for Bluetooth® Communication
(▶ page 13-36)

- Check Details of a Paired Bluetooth® Compatible Device
- Set a Bluetooth® Compatible Device as Trusted Device
- Check Details of Handset
- Change Name of Handset
- Communicate Using a Handsfree Device
- Hide Handset

About PC Connection

Use the USB cable to connect handset to a PC to transfer music files. Data on a memory card inserted in handset can be checked from a PC.

Getting Started

- Install the USB Host Driver software to your PC before connecting the USB cable. Download the USB Host Driver from the following URL: http://www.softbank.jp/mb/r/support/830t/
- When using the USB cable to connect handset to a PC, be sure to directly insert the plug of the USB cable into a USB port of the PC.
- You cannot use USB functions other than the charge function during infrared/Bluetooth® communication.

Configuring USB Connection Mode

Configure the mode for using the USB cable to connect a PC to handset in Standby. Select ***Card Reader*** to transfer music from a PC, and ***Communication*** for a dial-up connection.

1. **Press ■→*Settings*→■→*Connectivity*→■→*USB*→■**
2. **Select *Connection*→■→*Communication*, *Card Reader* or *Always Ask*→■**
   - Select ***Always Ask*** to choose the connection mode whenever you connect the USB cable in Standby.

- If handset is not in Standby when connecting the USB cable, handset changes to ***Communication*** mode even if Connection has been set to ***Card Reader*** or ***Always Ask***.

Transferring Music from a PC to Memory Card

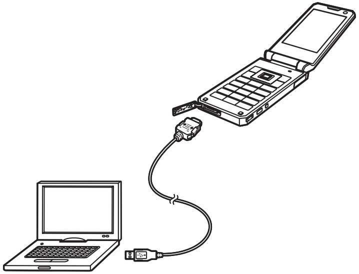
To transfer music files from a PC, use Card Reader mode.

- Offline Mode is set while handset is in Card Reader mode. In Offline Mode, handset cannot make/receive calls, send/receive messages, nor connect to Yahoo! Keitai. In this mode, all the keys are disabled.
- Timer viewing of TV will not start in Card Reader mode.
- Music files cannot be played on handset unless they are transferred using music transfer software.

Switching to Card Reader Mode by Connecting the USB Cable

1 In Standby, connect handset to a PC with the USB cable

- Open the cover of External Device Port and plug in the connector of the USB cable with the inscription facing up.
- If Connection is set to ***Always Ask***, select ***Card Reader***.



- If Connection is set to ***Communication***, handset does not change to ***Card Reader*** mode when connecting the USB cable in Standby.
- If handset is not in Standby when connecting the USB cable, handset changes to ***Communication*** mode even if Connection has been set to ***Card Reader*** or ***Always Ask***.

Transferring Data

1 Set handset to Card Reader mode

2 Follow the instructions on the PC

Canceling Card Reader Mode

1 Use the connected PC's function to remove an external device

2 Disconnect the USB cable from handset

More Features

Functions for PC Connection
(▶ page 12-15)

Settings for PC Connection
(▶ page 13-37)

- Use USB Cable for Charging

Memory Card Backup

About Memory Card Backup

Back up Phone Book entries, events and other data to memory card, and restore as required.

Precautions

- Some data cannot be transferred to memory card.
- Do not use a PC or other device to view or change a backup file on memory card. The file may be damaged.
- Copyrighted data may not be transferred to memory card or restored to handset, or may be deleted from memory card/handset after the transfer.
- If the file name of data restored to handset is more than 32 characters, characters that exceed the limit are omitted when the file is transferred.
- The security lock set to handset Data Folder will not be reflected in the transferred data.

- **About Backing Up Content Keys**
  - · Since only a single content key backup file can be saved to memory card, backing up another content key will overwrite the previously saved backup file. If you want to maintain the previously backed up content key, import the backup file from memory card to handset and then perform the backup operation again.
  - · The file whose content key has been moved to memory card for backup will no longer be available on handset.
  - · Importing a content key into handset adds it to other content keys in handset. It does not overwrite the current handset content keys.

Backing Up Data to Memory Card

1 **Press ■ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Backup* ➡ ■**



Backup Window

2 **Select *Transfer All* ➡ ■ ➡ *Backup* ➡ ■**

3 **Select the data to back up ➡ ■**



- To select other data, repeat this step.
- To select or unselect all data: Press [Y!] ➡ ***Mark All*** or ***Unmark All*** ➡ ■

4 **Press (Trans.)➡➡■➡Enter Handset Code**

- When transferring Phone Book entries, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to include images saved in Phone Book. Select ***NO*** to transfer Phone Book entries without images.
- When transferring events on Calendar or tasks, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to transfer past events/tasks. Select ***Futures Only*** not to transfer past events.

Restoring Data from Memory Card

1 **From Backup Window, select *Transfer All*➡■➡*Restore A* or *Restore B*➡■**

- If ***There are no data.*** appears, select either ***Restore A*** or ***Restore B*** to restore the data.
- To restore data from a non-3G model SoftBank handset, select ***From non-3G***.

2 **Select the data to restore➡■**



- To select other data, repeat this step.
- To select or unselect all data: Press ➡***Mark All*** or ***Unmark All***➡■

3 **Press (Read)➡■➡Enter Handset Code**

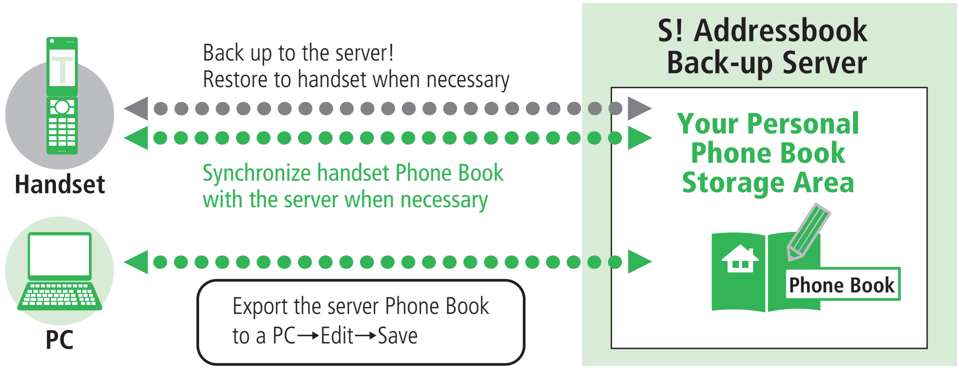
- To restore Phone Book/Events/Tasks/Messages/Bookmarks/Notepad: Select ***Add*** or ***Overwrite***➡■ (twice)➡Select data➡■
- If you select ***Add***, you can add the data without deleting data on handset.

More Features

Functions for Memory Card Backup
(▶ page 12-15)

About S! Addressbook Back-up

Back up Phone Book entries to network server and synchronize as required. This service is useful for recovering entries when handset is lost or damaged.
For details on S! Addressbook Back-up, access the following website.
http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/en/service/advanced/sab/



Precautions

- Back up is unavailable for the following settings:
  Ringtones/External Light/Picture
  Be careful as these Phone Book settings are deleted after restoring handset Phone Book.
- Server data is deleted upon service termination.
- Be careful about timing and synchronization type setting when you back up or read data on the server.
- If you synchronize Phone Book data with the synchronization type of ***Synchronize***, ***From Client***, or ***Backup*** after deleting all the Phone Book entries on handset, the server Phone Book is deleted.
- If you synchronize Phone Book data with the synchronization type of ***Synchronize***, ***From Server***, or ***Restore*** after deleting all the Phone Book entries on the server, Phone Book on handset is deleted.

Using S! Addressbook Back-up

Synchronizing Phone Book

Access network server to synchronize handset Phone Book with server Phone Book.

- When synchronizing for the first time, the ***Synchronize*** type is used regardless of the synchronization type setting.

1 **Press ■ ➡ *Phone Book* ➡ ■ ➡ *Addr. Bkup* ➡ ■**



S! Addressbook Back-up Window

2 **Select *Start Sync* ➡ ■ ➡ *Start* ➡ ■ ➡ Enter Handset Code**

- Follow the onscreen instructions.

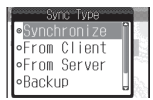
- Upon starting synchronization, handset connects to the Internet. Connection fees apply during Internet connections. Ending synchronization terminates the connection automatically.

Setting Synchronization Type

Select from the following types.

Synchronize	Synchronize handset Phone Book and server Phone Book.
From Client	Upload edited data to server Phone Book.
From Server	Download edited data from server Phone Book.
Backup	Back up handset Phone Book to server. Please note, server Phone Book is overwritten by handset Phone Book.
Restore	Restore handset Phone Book with server Phone Book. Please note, handset Phone Book is overwritten by server Phone Book.

1 **From S! Addressbook Back-up Window, select *Sync Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Sync Type* ➡ ■**



2 **Select a synchronization type ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ (OK)**

More Features

Functions for S! Addressbook Back-up
(▶ page 12-16)

File Transfer/Backup

Functions for Infrared Communication

Send My Details
[Send My Details]

■ ➡ ***Phone Book*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***My Details*** ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ ➡ ***Via Infrared*** ➡ ■

Functions for Bluetooth® Communication

From ➡ Paired Device List Window page 12-5

Change a Paired Device Name
[Device Name]

Paired Device List Window Select a device ➡ Y! ➡ ***Device Name*** ➡ ■ ➡ Enter a device name ➡ ■

Delete a Paired Device
[Delete Device]

Paired Device List Window Select a device ➡ Y! ➡ ***Delete*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***YES*** ➡ ■

Cut Off Connection to a Handsfree Device
[Disconnect]

Paired Device List Window Select a handsfree device ➡ Y! ➡ ***Disconnect*** ➡ ■

Send My Details
[Send My Details]

■ ➡ ***Phone Book*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***My Details*** ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ ➡ ***Via Bluetooth*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select a device ➡ ■

Use Bluetooth® for Dial-up Connections
[Dial-up Connections]

In Standby, receive a connection request from another Bluetooth® compatible device ➡ ***YES*** ➡ ■ ➡ Enter an authentication PIN code ➡ ■

- Handset can use dial-up connections when the Bluetooth setting (page 12-5) is ***ON***.
- Enter the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) on handset and the Bluetooth® compatible device to connect.
- Handset sends a message three times in three minutes to the same device if the receiving device does not respond.
- In a 3G HighSpeed area, you can receive at a maximum speed of 3.6 Mbps and send at a maximum speed of 384 kbps. Note that sending or receiving very large files can result in high connection fees.
- When accessing the Internet by connecting handset to a PC or PDA (i.e. mobile data communication), a large amount of data is often transferred in a very short time resulting in high connection fees. You are recommended to check the fees now and then during the mobile data communication.

Functions for PC Connection

Use USB Cable for Dial-up Connections [Dial-up Connections]

You can connect handset to a PC with the USB cable and access the Internet.

- In some cases, handset sends a message three times in three minutes to the same device if the receiving device does not respond.
- In a 3G HighSpeed area, you can receive at a maximum speed of 3.6 Mbps and send at a maximum speed of 384 kbps. Note that sending or receiving very large files can result in high connection fees.
- When accessing the Internet by connecting handset to a PC or PDA (i.e. mobile data communication), a large amount of data is often transferred in a very short time resulting in high connection fees. You are recommended to check the fees now and then during the mobile data communication.

Functions for Memory Card Backup

From ➡ Backup Window page 12-10

Back Up/Restore Setting Data [Relocate]

■**Backing Up Setting Data**

Backup Window ***Relocate***➡[■]➡Enter Handset Code➡***Backup***➡[■]➡Select a setting data item➡[■]➡[✉]➡[◻]➡[■]➡Enter a backup file code➡Re-enter the code for confirmation➡[◻] (twice)➡[■]

- To select more than one item, repeat selecting an item and pressing [■] as many times as required.
- To select or unselect all items, do the following.
  While an item is selected, [Y!]➡***Mark All*** or ***Unmark All***➡[■]
- A backup file code is a four-digit number set at each backup and required when restoring the setting data to handset. Write down your backup file codes and do not reveal them to others.

■**Restoring Setting Data**

Backup Window ***Relocate***➡[■]➡Enter Handset Code➡***Restore*** or ***From non-3G***➡[■]➡Select a setting data item➡[■]➡Enter the backup file code➡[◻] (twice)➡[■]

Delete Backup Files [Delete Data]

Backup Window ***Transfer All***➡[■]➡***Delete Data***➡[■]

■**Deleting Phone Book/Events/Tasks/Messages/Bookmarks/Notepad**

Select Data➡[■]➡Select a type of data➡[■]➡Select a file➡[■]➡[✉]➡***YES***➡[■]

- To select more than one file, repeat selecting a file and pressing [■] as many times as required.
- To select or unselect all files, do the following.
  While a file is selected, [Y!]➡***Mark All*** or ***Unmark All***➡[■]

■**Deleting All Files**

All➡[■]➡***YES***➡[■]➡Enter Handset Code

Functions for S! Addressbook Back-up

From ➡ S! Addressbook Back-up Window page 12-13

Auto Sync Settings [Auto Sync]

S! Addressbook Back-up Window ***Sync Settings***➡●➡***Auto Sync***➡●➡***ON***➡●➡Enter Handset Code

■Setting Synchronization Schedule

Weekly or ***Monthly***➡●➡Set a day of the week/date/time➡●➡✉

■Auto Sync After Editing Phone Book

After Updated➡●➡✉

- If you select ***After Updated***, synchronization will be performed automatically after about ten minutes whenever handset Phone Book is edited.

View S! Addressbook Back-up History [Sync Log]

S! Addressbook Back-up Window ***Sync Log***➡●➡Select a log➡●

13 Customization

Menus, Incoming Images, etc.

Start Here ■ ➡*Settings*➡ ■ ➡*Display*➡ ■ ➡*Main Screens*➡ ■ ▶

Set Menu Icons/Images

Preinstalled Icons/Images	▶*Deco* or *Deco* ➡ ■ ➡*Original* or *Ku-man*➡ ■ (twice)
Saved Icons/Images (Data Folder)	▶*Deco* or *Deco* ➡ ■ ➡*Phone Memory*➡ ■ ➡ *Gamendeco*➡ ■ ➡Select a Gamendeco➡ ■ (twice) ➡*YES*➡ ■
Keitaideco	▶*Deco* or *Deco* ➡ ■ ➡*Keitaideco*➡ ■ (twice) ➡*YES*➡ ■

Set Incoming Call Image

Preinstalled Image	▶*In-Calls*➡ ■ ➡*Voice Call* or *Video Call*➡ ■ ➡*Original* or *Ku-man*➡ ■ (twice)
Saved Image (Data Folder/Memory Card)	▶*In-Calls*➡ ■ ➡*Voice Call* or *Video Call*➡ ■ ➡*Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*➡ ■ ➡Select an image➡ ■ ➡ to compose the image➡ ➡ ■
Keitaideco	▶*In-Calls*➡ ■ ➡*Voice Call*➡ ■ ➡*Keitaideco*➡ ■ (twice)

Set Incoming Message Image

Preinstalled Image	▶*Messages*➡ ■ ➡*Receiving* or *DeliveryCheck*➡ ■ ➡*Original* or *Ku-man*➡ ■ (twice)
Saved Image (Data Folder/Memory Card)	▶*Messages*➡ ■ ➡*Receiving* or *DeliveryCheck*➡ ■ ➡*Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*➡ ■ ➡Select an image➡ ■ ➡ to compose the image➡ ➡ ■
Keitaideco	▶*Messages*➡ ■ ➡*Receiving*➡ ■ ➡*Keitaideco*➡ ■ (twice)

- To set Keitaideco for menu icons/images or incoming call/message image, Keitaideco must be set in advance (page 2-32).

Start Here [■]➡*Settings*➡[■]➡*Display*➡[■]➡*Main Screens*➡[■]▶

Set Download/Power-on/Power-off Screens	▶***Download***, ***Power On*** or ***Power Off***➡[■]➡***Original*** or ***Ku-man***➡[■] (twice)
Set Display Theme Collectively	▶[✉]➡***Original*** or ***Ku-man***➡[■]

- If you receive a call from a person whose picture is saved to Phone Book and ***Picture*** under ***Caller Details*** is set to ***ON***, the picture is shown regardless of the incoming image settings. However, if you receive a call from a secret Phone Book entry when Secret Mode is set to ***Hide***, the incoming image is shown.
- If a video file is set as ringtone, the incoming image is not shown.

Mini Tool Settings

Select Calendar, Notepad, Weather News, or other information to appear on Mini Tool during operations or in Standby.

- To show Mini Tool, Wide View must be set to ***OFF***.

Start Here [■]➡*Settings*➡[■]➡*Display*➡[■]➡*Mini Tool*➡[■]▶

Configure Mini Tool Settings

Set a Preinstalled Content	▶***Mini Tool***➡[■]➡***Preset*** or ***Giant Date***➡[■] (twice)
Set a Saved Content (Data Folder)	▶***Mini Tool***➡[■]➡***Phone Memory***➡[■]➡Select an item➡[■] (twice)

Start Here [■]➡*Settings*➡[■]➡*Display*➡[■]➡*Wide View*➡[■]▶

Set Wide View	▶Select a window➡[■]➡***ON*** or ***OFF***➡[■] ● If you change the ***IdleScreen*** setting, reconfigure the wallpaper setting. ● ***IdleScreen*** is fixed to ***ON*** in Simple Mode.
Set Wide View Collectively	▶[✉]➡***Wide View ON*** or ***Wide View OFF***➡[■]

Start Here ■ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Display* ➡ ■ ➡ *Mini Tool* ➡ ■ ▶

Set Slideshow for Mini Tool	▶ *Mini Photo* ➡ ■ ➡ *Image* ➡ ■ ➡ *Images List* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an image list ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ ● Images must be saved to an image list in advance.
Set Images Saved to an Image List	▶ *Mini Photo* ➡ ■ ➡ *Image* ➡ ■ ➡ *Images List* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an image list ➡ ✉ ➡ Select an item ➡ ■ ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an image ➡ ■ (twice) ➡ ✉ (twice)
Set Images in a Folder	▶ *Mini Photo* ➡ ■ ➡ *Image* ➡ ■ ➡ *Select Folder* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a folder ➡ ■ ➡ ✉
Set Preinstalled Images	▶ *Mini Photo* ➡ ■ ➡ *Image* ➡ ■ ➡ *Preset* ➡ ■ ➡ ✉

Incoming Caller Details

Start Here ■ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Display* ➡ ■ ➡ *Caller Details* ➡ ■ ▶

Set Caller Photo to Appear	▶ *Picture* ➡ ■ ➡ *ON* or *OFF* ➡ ■
Set Caller Info to Appear in External Display	▶ *Ext. Display* ➡ ■ ➡ *ON* or *OFF* ➡ ■

- When Picture is set to ***ON***, incoming image does not appear.
- If you receive a call from a secret Phone Book entry when Secret Mode is set to ***Hide***, the caller photo is not shown.
- If a video file is set as ringtone, the caller photo is not shown.

Font Settings

The font size and color for Display can be changed.

Start Here [■]➡*Settings*➡[■]➡*Display*➡[■]➡*Font Settings*➡[■]▶

Set Font Type	▶*Font Type*➡[■]➡Select a font type➡[■]
Set Font Size	▶*Font Size*➡[■]➡Select a window➡[■]➡Select a font size➡[■]
Set Font Color	▶*Font Color*➡[■]➡Select a font color pattern➡[■]
Set Font Sizes Collectively	▶*Font Size*➡[■]➡[✉]➡Select a font size➡[■]

Backlight Settings

Start Here [■]➡*Settings*➡[■]➡*Display*➡[■]➡*Backlight*➡[■]▶

Set Power Saving	▶*Power Saving*➡[■]➡Select a time➡[■]
Set Keypad Light Color	▶*Star Illumi*➡[■]➡*Color*➡[■]➡Select a color➡[■]
Set Keypad Lighting Time	▶*Star Illumi*➡[■]➡*Lighting Time*➡[■]➡Enter a lighting time (0 to 15 seconds)➡[■]
Set Display Lighting	▶*Displays*➡[■]➡*Lighting Time*➡[■]➡Enter a lighting time (0 to 60 seconds)➡[■]➡*Brightness*➡[■]➡Select a level➡[■]
Set Media Player Lighting (During Video Playback and Streaming)	▶*Media Player*➡[■]➡*Always ON*, *Always OFF* or *Same as Phone*➡[■]

Settings for External Light

Start Here ■ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Display* ➡ ■ ➡ *External Light* ➡ ■ ▶

Set External Light for Notifications	▶ *Notification* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a type of incoming event ➡ ■ ➡ Select a color or *OFF* ➡ ■
Set External Light for Incoming Events	▶ *Incoming* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a type of incoming event ➡ ■ ➡ Select a color or *OFF* ➡ ■
Set External Light for Incoming Messages	▶ *Incoming* ➡ ■ ➡ *Message* ➡ ■ ➡ *Color* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a color or *OFF* ➡ ■
Set External Light for Incoming Feeling Mail	▶ *Incoming* ➡ ■ ➡ *Message* ➡ ■ ➡ *Feeling* ➡ ■ ➡ *ON* or *OFF* ➡ ■

- Priority is given to External Light setting for each Phone Book entry.

Twinkle Light Settings

Start Here ■ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Display* ➡ ■ ➡ *Twinkle Light* ➡ ■ ▶

Set Twinkle Light	
Set a Preinstalled/Original Pattern	▶ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an item ➡ ■ ➡ *Preset* or *Original* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a pattern ➡ ■
Turn Off Twinkle Light	▶ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an item ➡ ■ ➡ *OFF* ➡ ■
Set Twinkle Light Collectively	▶ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ [シンプル✉] ➡ *Preset*, *Original* or *OFF* ➡ ■
Create an Original Twinkle Light Pattern	▶ *Design Light* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a title field ➡ ■ ➡ *Rename* ➡ ■ ➡ Enter a title ➡ ■ ➡ *Create Color* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a color ➡ ■ ➡ *Pattern* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a pattern ➡ ■

- Select a base color from the color table using the keypad. Then, use [◂▢▸] to adjust the color density.
- While selecting a color and pattern, Twinkle Light flashes in the color and pattern currently being selected so that you can check them.

Operator Name Setting

Show/Hide Operator Name in Standby	■➡*Settings*➡■➡*Display*➡■➡*Operator Name*➡■➡*ON* or *OFF*➡■

Interface Language

Switch Language	■➡*Settings*➡■➡*Phone Settings*➡■➡*言語選択* (Language)➡■➡Select a language➡■ ● If you select ***Automatic***, the language set on USIM Card is automatically selected.

Charging In Progress Image (Slideshow)

Start Here ■➡*Tools*➡■➡*Photo Stand*➡■▶

Set Slideshow On/Off	▶*ON/OFF*➡■➡*ON* or *OFF*➡■➡*Settings*➡■➡*Image*➡■➡*Images List*➡■➡Select an image list➡■ ● Images must be saved to an image list in advance.
Set Images Saved to an Image List	▶*ON/OFF*➡■➡*ON* or *OFF*➡■➡*Settings*➡■➡*Image*➡■➡*Images List*➡■➡Select an image list➡✉➡Select an item➡■➡*Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*➡■➡Select an image➡■ (twice) ➡✉
Set Images in a Folder	▶*ON/OFF*➡■➡*ON* or *OFF*➡■➡*Settings*➡■➡*Image*➡■➡*Select Folder*➡■➡Select a folder➡■
Set Preinstalled Images	▶*ON/OFF*➡■➡*ON* or *OFF*➡■➡*Settings*➡■➡*Image*➡■➡*Preset*➡■
Set Template	▶*ON/OFF*➡■➡*ON* or *OFF*➡■➡*Settings*➡■➡*Templates*➡■➡Select a template➡■ (twice)
Set Duration	▶*ON/OFF*➡■➡*ON* or *OFF*➡■➡*Settings*➡■➡*Duration*➡■➡Enter time➡■

Active Window Settings

Configure settings for S! Quick News in Shortcut Mode (page 2-8).

Start Here ■➡■➡*Settings*➡■➡*Display*➡■ ▶

Show All Information or Only Unread One	▶*Unread/Read*➡■➡*Unread Only* or *Show All*➡■
Set Ticker Speed	▶*Screen Speed*➡■➡Select a speed➡■

Start Here ■➡*Entertainment*➡■➡*S! Quick News*➡■➡*Settings*➡■ ▶

Show/Hide Images	▶*Image*➡■➡*Show* or *Hide*➡■
Restore Settings and Registered Contents of S! Quick News to Default	▶*Reset*➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡*YES*➡■

Incoming Event Settings

Response Settings for Incoming Calls

Start Here ■➡*Settings*➡■➡*Call Settings*➡■➡*Answer Type*➡■▶

Answer Incoming Calls by Opening Handset (Open to Talk)	▶*Open to Talk*➡■➡*ON*➡■
Set Any Key Answer	▶*Any Keys*➡■➡*ON* or *OFF*➡■ ● If Any Key Answer is set to *ON*, you can answer incoming voice calls/Video Calls and S! Circle Talk calls by pressing a key from 0 to 9, * or #, besides ✓, ■ or TV (for Video Call).

Answering Machine Settings

Set Answering Machine Response Time	■➡*Settings*➡■➡*Call Settings*➡■➡*Ans Machine*➡■➡*Set Duration*➡■➡Enter a response time➡■

Reject Settings

Start Here ■➡*Settings*➡■➡*Call Settings*➡■➡*Reject Calls*➡■➡Enter Handset Code▶

Reject Specific Incoming Calls		▶Select calls to reject➡■➡*ON*➡■
Reject Calls from Specified Phone Numbers		▶*Specific #s*➡■➡*ON/OFF*➡■➡*ON*➡■
Use Reject List (Save Numbers to Reject List)		▶*Specific #s*➡■➡*Reject List*➡■➡✉➡*Phone Book*➡■➡Select an entry➡■➡Select a phone number➡■ (twice)
	Enter a Number	▶*Specific #s*➡■➡*Reject List*➡■➡✉➡*Phone Number*➡■➡Enter a phone number➡■ (twice)
	Select a Number from Call Log	▶*Specific #s*➡■➡*Reject List*➡■➡✉➡*Call Log*➡■➡Select a phone number➡■ (twice)

● If Call Barring (page 3-17) is set for incoming calls, Call Barring takes priority.

Priority Settings

Start Here ■➡*Settings*➡■➡*Priority*➡■ ▶

Set Priority	▶ Select a function➡■➡Select a type of incoming event➡■➡***Pause*** or ***Continue***➡■
Set Priority While Media Player is Playing	▶ ***Media Player***➡■➡***Continue*** or ***Pause***➡■
Set Priority While Running S! Appli	▶ ***S! Appli***➡■➡Select a type of incoming event➡■➡***Pause Apps*** or ***Continue Apps***➡■
Set Priority During S! Circle Talk	▶ ***Circle Talk***➡■➡***Pause*** or ***Continue***➡■
Set Alarm Activation While Using TV	▶ ***TV***➡■➡***Alarm***➡■➡***Pause*** or ***Continue***➡■

Manner Mode

Start Here [■]➡*Settings*➡[■]➡*Sounds*➡[■]➡*Manner Mode*➡[■]▶

Switch Manner Modes	▶*Switch Mode*➡[■]➡Select a mode➡[■]
Customize Original Mode	▶*Original Mode*➡[■]➡Select an Original Mode➡[■]➡Select an item➡[■]➡Set each item➡[✉] ● For details on setting each item, see "Sound and Vibration".

Sound and Vibration

Start Here [■]➡*Settings*➡[■]➡*Sounds*➡[■]▶

Set Ringtone		
	Set a Preinstalled Sound	▶*Incoming*➡[■]➡Select a type of incoming event➡[■]➡*Ringtone*➡[■]➡*Patterns* or *Melodies*➡[■]➡Select a ringtone➡[■]
	Set a File in Data Folder/Memory Card	▶*Incoming*➡[■]➡Select a type of incoming event➡[■]➡*Ringtone*➡[■]➡*Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*➡[■]➡Select a file➡[■] (twice) ● If a play point is included in the selected file, select the play point after selecting the file. ● If you set a SMAF file which includes an image as ringtone, the image may not be shown correctly.
	Set Downloaded Keitaideco Ringtone	▶*Incoming*➡[■]➡*Voice Call* or *Message*➡[■]➡*Ringtone*➡[■]➡*Keitaideco*➡[■] (twice) ● Keitaideco must be set in advance (page 2-32).
Set Ringtone Volume		▶*Incoming*➡[■]➡Select a type of incoming event➡[■]➡*Ringtone Vol.*➡[■]➡Set volume level➡[■]

Start Here ■➡*Settings*➡■➡*Sounds*➡■▶

Set Ringtone Duration		
	Specify a Time by Direct Entry	▶*Incoming*➡■➡*Message*, *DeliveryCheck*, *Missed Call* or *Friend Status*➡■➡*Duration*➡■➡*Set Duration*➡■➡Enter a ring time (1 to 99 seconds) ➡■
	Play a Specified File until the End	▶*Incoming*➡■➡*Message*, *DeliveryCheck*, *Missed Call* or *Friend Status*➡■➡*Duration*➡■➡*1 Cycle*➡■
Set Vibration		▶*Incoming*➡■➡Select a type of incoming event➡■➡*Vibration*➡■➡Select a pattern➡■
	Set Vibration for Incoming Messages	▶*Incoming*➡■➡*Message*➡■➡*Vibration*➡■➡*Pattern*➡■➡Select a pattern➡■
	Set Vibration for Incoming Feeling Mail	▶*Incoming*➡■➡*Message*➡■➡*Vibration*➡■➡*Feeling*➡■➡*ON* or *OFF*➡■
Set Sound Volume		▶*Sound Vol.*➡■➡Set volume level➡■
Set Speaker Volume		▶*Speaker Vol.*➡■➡Set volume level➡■
Set Sound Effects		
	Set Default Tone	▶*Sound Effects*➡■➡Select an item➡■➡*Tone Type*➡■➡*Original*➡■ ● Select *Original 1* (default) or *Original 2* for Keypad Tone.
	Set a Preinstalled Melody	▶*Sound Effects*➡■➡Select an item➡■➡*Tone Type*➡■➡*Melodies*➡■➡Select a melody➡■ ● You cannot set preinstalled melodies as Keypad Tone.
	Set a File in Data Folder/Memory Card	▶*Sound Effects*➡■➡Select an item➡■➡*Tone Type*➡■➡*Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*➡■➡Select a file➡■ (twice) ● You cannot set files which include an image as sound effects. ● You cannot set files in Data Folder or memory card as Keypad Tone.

Start Here ■ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Sounds* ➡ ■ ▶

Set Sound Effects Volume	▶ *Sound Effects* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an item ➡ ■ ➡ *Tone Volume* ➡ ■ ➡ Set volume level ➡ ■
Set Kacha-ble Lets you know there are missed calls or new messages by vibrating handset when you open it.	▶ *Kacha-ble* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an item ➡ ■ ➡ *ON* or *OFF* ➡ ■
Set Kacha-ble Collectively	▶ *Kacha-ble* ➡ ■ ➡ シンプル ➡ *ON* or *OFF* ➡ ■

Message Creation Settings

Start Here [シンプル mail key]➡*Settings*➡[■]➡*Creating*➡[■]▶

Add Recipients to Simple Input List	▶*Simple Input*➡[■]➡Select a list item with no entry➡[■]➡Enter an address ● For details on how to enter addresses, see page 4-4.
Set Groups	▶*Category*➡[■]➡Select a group➡[■]➡[シンプル mail key]➡Enter addresses
Edit a Group Name	▶*Category*➡[■]➡Select a group➡[Y! key]➡*Rename*➡[■]➡Enter a group name➡[■]
Set Send Type (To/Cc/Bcc) for Each Address	▶*Category*➡[■]➡Select a group➡[■]➡Select an address➡[Y! key]➡*To/Cc/Bcc*➡[■]➡*To*, *Cc* or *Bcc*➡[■]
Set a Signature	▶*Signature*➡[■]➡*Signature 1* or *Signature 2*➡[■]➡Enter a signature➡[■]
Cancel Signature Insertion	▶*Signature*➡[■]➡*No Signature*➡[■]
Edit Signature	▶*Signature*➡[■]➡*Signature 1* or *Signature 2*➡[Y! key]➡*Edit*➡[■]➡Edit the signature➡[■]
Set Default Mail Type	▶*Default Type*➡[■]➡*SMS* or *S! Mail*➡[■]
Show/Hide Notification When Mail Type is Switched	▶*Notify Type*➡[■]➡*Show* or *Hide*➡[■]

Outgoing Messages

Start Here ✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Sending* ➡ ■ ▶

Show/Hide Sending Confirmation Window	▶ *Confirmation* ➡ ■ ➡ *Show* or *Hide* ➡ ■
Set Vibration When Sending is Confirmed	▶ *Vibration* ➡ ■ ➡ *ON* or *OFF* ➡ ■
Check Delivery	▶ *DeliveryCheck* ➡ ■ ➡ *Ask* ➡ ■
Set Server Storage Period of Sent Messages	▶ *Expiry* ➡ ■ ➡ *SMS* or *S! Mail* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an expiry time ➡ ■
Set Message Priority	▶ *Priority* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a priority ➡ ■
Set Time for Delivering Messages to Recipients	▶ *Delivery Time* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a delivery time ➡ ■
Save a Reply Address	▶ *Reply to* ➡ ■ ➡ *ON* ➡ ■ ➡ Enter an address ● For details on how to enter addresses, see page 4-4.
Edit SMS Center Number (+819066519300)	▶ *Message Ctr* ➡ ■ (three times) ➡ Input SMS Center Number ➡ ■

- SMS may become unavailable after changing SMS Center Number.
- Once SMS Center Number is changed, resetting handset will not restore the default number.

Display Settings

Start Here ✉ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Display* ➡ ■ ▶

Set Font Size	▶ *Font Size* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a font size ➡ ■
Set Scroll Unit	▶ *Scroll Unit* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a scroll unit ➡ ■
Show/Hide Address and Subject When Sending/ Receiving Messages	▶ *Show Address* ➡ ■ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ *Main Display* or *Ext. Display* ➡ ■ ➡ Select a viewing mode ➡ ■

Incoming Messages

Start Here ✉➡*Settings*➡■➡*Receiving*➡■▶

Set New Message Retrieve Mode	▶*Retrieve Mode*➡■➡*Home* or *Roaming*➡■➡*Immediate*, *Phone # Only* or *Deferred*➡■ ● Select *Home* to receive S! Mail within SoftBank's service area; select *Roaming* to receive S! Mail outside that area.
Set Automatic Display of Picture Files	▶*Auto-extract*➡■➡*Picture*➡■➡*Show* or *Hide*➡■
Set Automatic Playback of Sound Files	▶*Auto-extract*➡■➡*Sound*➡■➡*Unmute* or *Mute*➡■
Set Spam Filter	▶*Anti-Spam*➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡*Sort Messages*➡■➡*Sort* or *Do not Sort*➡■➡*Select Folder*➡■➡Select a folder➡■

3D Pictograms

3D Pictograms are a 3D animation playback function compatible with words, pictographs and emoticons in message text.

Start Here ✉➡*Settings*➡■➡*3D Pictograms*➡■▶

Set Automatic Playback of 3D Pictograms	▶*Auto Play*➡■➡*All*, *Unread Only* or *OFF*➡■
Set Font and Background Colors for 3D Pictograms	▶*Colors*➡■➡Select a color combination➡■

- 3D Pictograms are unavailable for S! Mail notifications, SMS with no text and Graphic Mail.
- Background playback of music files is paused during 3D Pictograms playback.

3D Mail

3D Mail is a function to play 3D animation that reflects the content of mail by extracting pictographs, certain emotional expressions or keywords in message text.

Set Playback of 3D Mail	➡*Settings*➡■➡*3D Mail*➡■➡*ON* or *OFF*➡■

- 3D Mail is unavailable for S! Mail notifications, messages with no text and Graphic Mail.
- If 3D Mail is set to ***ON*** when Auto Play of 3D Pictograms is set to ***All*** or ***Unread Only***, 3D Mail is played after playback of 3D Pictograms.

Message Box Settings

Disable Auto-delete	➡*Message Box*➡■➡Select a folder➡➡*Auto-delete*➡■➡*Received* or *Sent*➡■➡*Do not Set*➡■
Switch Between Folder View and All Message View	➡*Message Box*➡■➡➡*Display*➡■➡*Folder View*➡■➡*Folder View* or *All Messages*➡■
Switch Between Mixed View and Separate View	➡*Message Box*➡■➡➡*Display*➡■➡*Received/Sent*➡■➡*Mixed View* or *Separate View*➡■

Message List View Settings

Start Here ➡*Message Box*➡■➡Select a folder➡■➡➡*Display*➡■ ▶

Switch Message List Views	▶*Display Items*➡■➡*Subject* or *Addresses*➡■
Split Message List Window	▶*Change View*➡■➡*Preview* or *Text Only*➡■ ● If you select ***Preview***, the beginning of Graphic Mail text is also shown in the preview window. ● If you do not want to split Message List Window, select ***List Only***.

Customization

13

● When ***Subject*** is selected for Display Items, the preview window shows the other party's address. When ***Addresses*** is selected for Display Items, the subject is shown in the preview window.

Message List Window Settings

Start Here [Mail]➡***Message Box***➡[■]➡Select a folder➡[■]▶

Filter Messages	▶[Y!]➡***Filter***➡[■]➡Select a criterion➡[■]
Create a New Phone Book Entry with a Phone Number/E-mail Address	▶Select a message➡[Y!]➡***Save Sender***➡[■]➡***Add New***➡[■]➡Enter other items➡[Mail]
Add a Phone Number/E-mail Address to a Phone Book Entry	▶Select a message➡[Y!]➡***Save Sender***➡[■]➡***Add***➡[■]➡Select a Phone Book entry➡[■]➡[Mail]
Switch Between Unread and Read	
Switch One Message Between Unread and Read	▶Select a message➡[Y!]➡***Unread/Read***➡[■]➡***One***➡[■]➡***To Unread*** or ***To Read***➡[■]
Switch Multiple Messages Between Unread and Read	▶[Y!]➡***Unread/Read***➡[■]➡***Select Multi***➡[■]➡***To Unread*** or ***To Read***➡[■]➡Select messages➡[■]➡[Mail]
Switch All Messages in a Folder Between Unread and Read	▶[Y!]➡***Unread/Read***➡[■]➡***All***➡[■]➡***To Unread*** or ***To Read***➡[■]➡***Change***➡[■]

● Only received messages can be switched between unread and read.

Mini Tool Setting in Message List Window

Set Mini Tool in Message List Window	[Mail]➡***Message Box***, ***Drafts*** or ***Unsent***➡[■]➡[Y!]➡***Display***➡[■]➡***Wide View ON*** or ***Wide View OFF***➡[■] ● To show Mini Tool in Message List Window, select ***Wide View OFF***.

Security Settings

Start Here for Yahoo! Keitai ■➡*Yahoo! Keitai*➡■➡*Settings*➡■➡*Security*➡■▶

Start Here for PC Site Browser ■➡*Yahoo! Keitai*➡■➡✉➡*Settings*➡■➡*Security*➡■▶

Send/Block Manufacture Number	▶*Manufacture #*➡■➡*Send* or *Do not Send*➡■
Configure Send Referer Setting	▶*Send Referer*➡■➡*Send* or *Do not Send*➡■
Enable/Disable Cookies	▶*Cookie*➡■➡*Enable*, *Disable* or *Always Ask*➡■
Configure Script Settings	▶*Script*➡■➡*Ask Once*, *Enable*, *Disable* or *Always Ask*➡■
Check Root Certificates	▶*Root Certif.*➡■➡Select a root certificate➡■
Set Authentication	▶*Authentica...*➡■➡*Retain Info*, *Per Session* or *Do not Retain*➡■
Set SSL Communication	▶*Session Info.*➡■➡*Show* or *Hide*➡■

Universal Settings for Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser

Start Here for Yahoo! Keitai ■➡*Yahoo! Keitai*➡■➡*Settings*➡■▶

Start Here for PC Site Browser ■➡*Yahoo! Keitai*➡■➡✉➡*Settings*➡■▶

Clear Cache	▶*Memory Mgr.*➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡*Clear Cache*➡■➡*YES*➡■
Delete All Cookies	▶*Memory Mgr.*➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡*Clear Cookie*➡■➡*YES*➡■
Clear Authentication Info	▶*Memory Mgr.*➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡*Clear Auth...*➡■➡*YES*➡■
Return Browser Settings, Bookmarks, and Screen Memo to Default	▶*Browser Reset*➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡*YES*➡■
Restore Settings and Stored Information to Default	▶*Reset Setting*➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡*YES*➡■

Yahoo! Keitai Settings

Set Storage Location of Downloaded Contents	■➡*Yahoo! Keitai*➡■➡*Settings*➡■➡*Storage*➡■➡*Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*➡■

PC Site Browser Settings

Do Not Show Alert When Switching Browsers	■➡*Yahoo! Keitai*➡■➡✉➡*Settings*➡■➡*Warning*➡■➡*PC Browser* or *Yahoo! Keitai*➡■➡*Hide*➡■

Web Page Settings

Web Page ➡ (page 5-3, 5-4)

Change Font Size	Web Page➡[Y!]➡***Settings***➡[■]➡***Font Size***➡[■]➡Select a size➡[■]
Change Scroll Unit	Web Page➡[Y!]➡***Settings***➡[■]➡***Scroll Unit***➡[■]➡Select a scroll unit➡[■]
Change Text Encoding Type	Web Page➡[Y!]➡***Settings***➡[■]➡***Encoding Type***➡[■]➡Select a text encoding type➡[■]
Adjust Sound Playback Volume	Web Page➡[Y!]➡***Settings***➡[■]➡***Sound Volume***➡[■]➡Set volume level➡[■]
Do Not Download Images and Melodies from Web Pages	Web Page➡[Y!]➡***Settings***➡[■]➡***Downloads***➡[■]➡***Images*** or ***Sounds***➡[■]➡***Do not Download***➡[■]
Set Security Lock	[■]➡***Yahoo! Keitai***➡[■]➡***Bookmarks***, ***Screen Memo***, ***Enter URL*** or ***History***➡[Y!]➡***Security Lock***➡[■]➡Enter Handset Code➡***Lock*** or ***Unlock***➡[■]
Set Security Lock to a Bookmark Folder	[■]➡***Yahoo! Keitai***➡[■]➡***Bookmarks***➡[■]➡Select a folder➡[Y!]➡***Security Lock***➡[■]➡Enter Handset Code➡***Lock*** or ***Unlock***➡[■]
Set Security Lock to PC Sites	[■]➡***Yahoo! Keitai***➡[■]➡[シンプル]➡***Bookmarks***, ***Screen Memo***, ***Enter URL*** or ***History***➡[Y!]➡***Security Lock***➡[■]➡Enter Handset Code➡***Lock*** or ***Unlock***➡[■]

International Call Settings

Start Here ■➡*Settings*➡■➡*Call Settings*➡■➡*Call Services*➡■➡*Intl. Calls*➡■▶

Switch Network Systems (3G/GSM)	▶*SelectNetwork*➡■➡*Automatic, 3G* or *GSM*➡■
Change International Code	▶*Intl. Code*➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡Enter a code➡■
Add Country Codes to Country Number List	▶*CountryNumber*➡■➡Y!➡*Add*➡■➡Enter a country name➡■➡Enter a country code➡■
Set Operator to Use	▶*Operator*➡■➡*Auto/Manual*➡■➡*Automatic* or *Manual*➡■➡Select an operator➡■ ● When ***Automatic*** is selected, an operator is automatically selected according to the priority list.
Change Priority Order of Operators	▶*Operator*➡■➡*Set Priority*➡■➡Y!➡*Insert* or *Move*➡■➡Select an operator ➡■ (twice) ➡Select a position➡■ ● If you select ***Add to Bottom***, you can select and add an operator to the end of the priority list.
Add an Operator	▶*Operator*➡■➡*Add Operator*➡■➡*Empty*➡■➡*Operator Name*➡■➡ Enter an operator name➡■➡*Country Code*➡■➡Enter a country code➡■➡ *Operator Code*➡■➡Enter an operator code➡■➡Y!➡*Save*➡■

Call Cost Settings

Start Here ■➡*Settings*➡■➡*Call Settings*➡■➡*Call Time&Cost*➡■▶

Set Currency & Exchange Rate	▶*Cost Unit*➡■➡Y!➡*Settings*➡■➡Enter PIN2➡■➡Enter a currency (three characters)➡■➡Enter an exchange rate➡■➡*YES*➡■
Show Call Cost After Each Call	▶*Cost Display*➡■➡*ON*➡■
Set Maximum Cost Limit	▶*Cost Limit*➡■➡Y!➡*Set Max Limit*➡■➡Enter PIN2➡■ (twice) ➡Enter a maximum cost limit➡■

- You cannot make a voice call or Video Call if the total cost reaches the specified maximum cost limit. If the limit is reached during a call, the call ends.

Video Call Settings

Start Here ■ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ■ ▶

Set Alternative Picture		
	Set Default Image	▶ *Alt. Picture* ➡ ■ ➡ *ON* ➡ ■ ➡ *Preset* ➡ ■ (twice)
	Set an Image in Data Folder/Memory Card	▶ *Alt. Picture* ➡ ■ ➡ *ON* ➡ ■ ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an image ➡ ■ (twice)
Set Self-view Check		▶ *Self-view* ➡ ■ ➡ *ON* or *OFF* ➡ ■
Set Incoming Image Quality		▶ *Image Quality* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an item ➡ ■
Add a Phone Number to Auto Answer List		
	Select a Phone Number from Phone Book	▶ *Auto Answer* ➡ ■ ➡ *Answer List* ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ *Phone Book* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an entry ➡ ■ ➡ Select a phone number ➡ ■ (twice)
	Enter a Phone Number Directly	▶ *Auto Answer* ➡ ■ ➡ *Answer List* ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ *Phone Number* ➡ ■ ➡ Enter a phone number ➡ ■ (twice)
	Select a Phone Number from Call Log	▶ *Auto Answer* ➡ ■ ➡ *Answer List* ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ *Call Log* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an entry ➡ ■ (twice)
Set Mute		▶ *Mute* ➡ ■ ➡ *Mute My Voice*, *Mute All* or *OFF* ➡ ■
Set Audio Output		▶ *Loud Speaker* ➡ ■ ➡ *ON* or *OFF* ➡ ■
Set Hold Image		
	Set Default Image	▶ *Hold Setting* ➡ ■ ➡ *Hold on Call* or *Hold Answer* ➡ ■ ➡ *Preset* ➡ ■ (twice)
	Set an Image in Data Folder/Memory Card	▶ *Hold Setting* ➡ ■ ➡ *Hold on Call* or *Hold Answer* ➡ ■ ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an image ➡ ■ (twice)

Earphone-Microphone Settings

Start Here ■ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Earphone Mike* ➡ ■ ▶

Save a Phone Number for Earphone-Microphone Call	
Select a Phone Number from Phone Book	▶ *Earphone Call* ➡ ■ ➡ *ON/OFF* ➡ ■ ➡ *ON* ➡ ■ ➡ *Set Number* ➡ ■ ➡ *Phone Book* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an entry ➡ ■ ➡ Select a phone number ➡ ■ (twice)
Enter a Phone Number Directly	▶ *Earphone Call* ➡ ■ ➡ *ON/OFF* ➡ ■ ➡ *ON* ➡ ■ ➡ *Set Number* ➡ ■ ➡ *Phone Number* ➡ ■ ➡ Enter a phone number ➡ ■ (twice)
Set Auto Answer Allows you to answer an incoming voice call without pressing the switch when Earphone-Microphone is connected.	▶ *Auto Answer* ➡ ■ ➡ *ON/OFF* ➡ ■ ➡ *ON* ➡ ■ ➡ *Set Duration* ➡ ■ ➡ Enter a response time ➡ ■
Set Microphone to Use When Earphone-Microphone is Connected	▶ *Select Mike* ➡ ■ ➡ *Phone Mike* or *Earphone Mike* ➡ ■ ● To switch microphones during a call (including voice recording): Y! ➡ *Select Mike* ➡ ■ ➡ *Phone Mike* or *Earphone Mike* ➡ ■

- If you set Auto Answer and Answering Machine, Answering Machine is given priority.
- If you set Auto Answer and Voice Mail, the one with shorter response time is given priority. If the response time is the same, Voice Mail is given priority.

External Device Settings

Set Access Point Name (APN) to Perform Packet Transmission from a PC	■ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Call Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *External Device* ➡ ■ ➡ *Empty* ➡ ■ ➡ Enter an access point name (APN) ➡ ■ ➡ *YES* ➡ ■

Settings for Shooting Pictures/Videos

Viewfinder ➡ (page 7-3)/ Video Viewfinder ➡ (page 7-5)

Save Pictures/Videos Automatically	Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder➡[Y!]➡***Save Settings***➡[■]➡***Auto Save***➡[■]➡***ON***➡[■]
Change Storage Location	Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder➡[Y!]➡***Save Settings***➡[■]➡***Storage***➡[■]➡***Phone Memory*** or ***Memory Card***➡[■]➡Select a folder➡[■]
Set Image Quality	Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder➡[Y!]➡***Picture*** or ***Movie***➡[■]➡***Quality***➡[■]➡Select a quality➡[■]
Set White Balance	Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder➡[Y!]➡***Picture*** or ***Movie***➡[■]➡***White Balance***➡[■]➡Select an item➡[■]
Adjust Color Control	Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder➡[Y!]➡***Picture*** or ***Movie***➡[■]➡***Color Control***➡[■]➡Select a color tone➡[■]
Set Picture/Video Effects	Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder➡[Y!]➡***Picture*** or ***Movie***➡[■]➡***Effects***➡[■]➡Select an effect➡[■]
Adjust Flicker E.g. under fluorescent light, you can set the frequency (Automatic/50Hz/60Hz) to reduce flicker.	Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder➡[Y!]➡***Function***➡[■]➡***Flicker***➡[■]➡***Automatic***, ***50 Hz*** or ***60 Hz***➡[■]
Set Shortcuts While Shooting Pictures/Videos	Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder➡[Y!]➡***Function***➡[■]➡***Key Shortcut***➡[■]➡***ON*** or ***OFF***➡[■]
Set File Name	
Use Date and Time	Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder➡[Y!]➡***Save Settings***➡[■]➡***File Name***➡[■]➡***Date&Time***➡[■]
Define a Name	Viewfinder/Video Viewfinder➡[Y!]➡***Save Settings***➡[■]➡***File Name***➡[■]➡***Define***➡[■]➡Enter a file name➡[■]

- Auto Save cannot be set in ***Video*** mode.

Settings for Taking Pictures

Viewfinder ➡ (page 7-3)/ Preview Window ➡ (page 7-3)

Set Focus Mode		Viewfinder➡[Y!]➡***Function***➡[■]➡***Focus Mode***➡[■]➡Select a focus mode➡[■]
Change Shutter Sound		Viewfinder➡[Y!]➡***Function***➡[■]➡***Shutter Sound***➡[■]➡***Pattern 1*** or ***Pattern 2***➡[■]
Add Date Stamps		Viewfinder➡[Y!]➡***Picture***➡[■]➡***Date Stamp***➡[■]➡***ON***➡[■]➡Select a font color➡[■]
Set Guidelines		Viewfinder➡[Y!]➡***Function***➡[■]➡***Grid***➡[■]➡***ON*** or ***OFF***➡[■]
Take a Picture for a Phone Book Entry		
	Create a New Phone Book Entry with a Picture	Preview Window➡[Y!]➡***To Phone Book***➡[■]➡***Add New***➡[■]➡Create a Phone Book entry ● Set Camera mode to ***Mobile*** and Picture Size to ***W112×H112*** in advance. ● For details on saving a Phone Book entry, see page 2-17.
	Add a Picture to a Phone Book Entry	Preview Window➡[Y!]➡***To Phone Book***➡[■]➡***Add***➡[■]➡Select a Phone Book entry➡[■]➡[✉] ● If the selected Phone Book entry contains a picture, select ***YES*** and press [✉] to replace the picture. ● Set Camera mode to ***Mobile*** and Picture Size to ***W112×H112*** in advance.

● When Camera mode is set to ***Digital***, or when it is set to ***Mobile*** with Picture Size set to ***W112×H112***, you cannot add date stamps.

Settings for Recording Videos

Video Viewfinder ➡ (page 7-5)/ Preview Window ➡ (page 7-6)

Do Not Record Sound	Video Viewfinder ➡[Y!]➡***Voice Record***➡[■]➡***OFF***➡[■]
Enlarge Video Viewfinder	Video Viewfinder ➡[Y!]➡***ScreenDisplay***➡[■] ● Cannot be set when Video mode is set to ***Video***.
Change Start/End Tone	Video Viewfinder ➡[Y!]➡***Function***➡[■]➡***Start/End***➡[■]➡***Pattern 1*** or ***Pattern 2***➡[■]
Set Preview On/Off	Video Viewfinder➡[Y!]➡***Function***➡[■]➡***Preview***➡[■]➡***ON*** or ***OFF***➡[■] ● Can only be set when Video mode is set to ***Video***.
Set Recorded Video as a Ringtone Pattern	
Create a New Phone Book Entry with a Ringtone Pattern Set for It	Preview Window➡[Y!]➡***To Phone Book***➡[■]➡***Add New***➡[■]➡Create a Phone Book entry ● Cannot be set when Video mode is set to ***Video***. ● For details on saving a Phone Book entry, see page 2-17.
Set a Ringtone Pattern for a Phone Book Entry	Preview Window➡[Y!]➡***To Phone Book***➡[■]➡***Add***➡[■]➡Select a Phone Book entry➡[■]➡[✉] ● If a ringtone pattern has already been set for the selected Phone Book entry, select ***YES*** and press [✉] to replace the ringtone pattern. ● Cannot be set when Video mode is set to ***Video***.

TV View Screen Setting

Set TV Start-up View	[■]➡***TV***➡[■]➡***Settings***➡[■]➡***First View***➡[■]➡***Full Screen***, ***Portrait*** or ***Landscape***➡[■]

TV Audio Setting

Set Audio Output	[■]➡***TV***➡[■]➡***Settings***➡[■]➡***Output Settings***➡[■]➡***Speaker/Earphone*** or ***Wireless***➡[■] ● When ***Wireless*** is selected: Select a paired Bluetooth® compatible device ➡[■] ● For details on pairing a Bluetooth® compatible device, see page 12-5 as well as the instruction manual for the device.

Settings for Watching TV

Start Here [TV]➡[Y!]➡***Settings***➡[■]▶

Channel List Name	▶***Set Channels***➡[■]➡Select a channel list➡[Y!]➡***Rename***➡[■]➡Enter a channel list name➡[■]
Auto-off Timer	▶***Off-timer***➡[■]➡***30 minutes***, ***60 minutes***, ***120 minutes*** or ***OFF***➡[■]

Image and Sound

Start Here [TV]➡[Y!]▶

Set Brightness	▶***Settings***➡[■]➡***Screen Settings***➡[■]➡***Brightness***➡[■]➡Select a level➡[■]
Set Image Quality	▶***Settings***➡[■]➡***Screen Settings***➡[■]➡***Image Quality***➡[■]➡***Fine***, ***Normal*** or ***Cinema***➡[■]

Start Here [TV]➡[Y!]▶

Set Image Sharpness	▶*Settings*➡[■]➡*Screen Settings*➡[■]➡*Sharpness*➡[■]➡*Sharp*, *Soft* or *OFF*➡[■]
Set Economy Mode	▶*Settings*➡[■]➡*Screen Settings*➡[■]➡*Economy Mode*➡[■]➡*ON* or *OFF*➡[■]
Set Subtitles	▶*Subtitles*➡[■]➡*ON* or *OFF*➡[■]
Switch Main and Sub Audio	▶*Switch Audio*➡[■]➡*Main* or *Sub*➡[■]

Data Broadcasts

Start Here [TV]➡[Y!]➡*Settings*➡[■]➡*Datacasting*➡[■]▶

Set Data Communication Confirmation Window	▶*Start Comm.*➡[■]➡*Ask before* or *Do not Ask*➡[■]
Set Secure Connection Confirmation Window Specify whether a confirmation window appears whenever data communication that uses encryption, a digital signature, or some other security function is performed over a secure connection (SSL).	▶*Go to Secured*➡[■]➡*Ask before* or *Do not Ask*➡[■]
Set Memory Access Confirmation Window	▶*Access Memory*➡[■]➡*Ask before* or *Do not Ask*➡[■]
Delete Broadcast Data	
Delete Data of a Station	▶*Clear Memory*➡[■]➡Select a station➡[Y!]➡*Clear*➡[■]➡*YES*➡[■]
Delete All Data	▶*Clear Memory*➡[■]➡[Y!]➡*Clear All*➡[■]➡Enter Handset Code➡*YES*➡[■]
Select a Station and Delete by Entry	▶*Clear Memory*➡[■]➡Select a station➡[■]➡Select an entry➡[Y!]➡*Clear*➡[■]➡*YES*➡[■]
Delete All Data of a Station and Its Affiliated Stations	▶*Clear Memory*➡[■]➡Select a station➡[■]➡[Y!]➡*Clear All*➡[■]➡Enter Handset Code➡*YES*➡[■]

TV Settings

Start Here [TV] ➡ [Y!] ➡ *Settings* ➡ [■] ➡ *Datacasting* ➡ [■] ▶

Set Location Information Send Setting	▶ *Send Location* ➡ [■] ➡ *Always Ask*, *Send* or *Do not Send* ➡ [■]
Set Whether or Not to Send Manufacture Number Specify whether your manufacture number (IMEI) is sent automatically as a user ID when you use a data broadcast or packet transmission.	▶ *Manufacture #* ➡ [■] ➡ *Send* or *Do not Send* ➡ [■]
Set Content Storage Location	▶ *Storage* ➡ [■] ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ [■]

- Positioning cannot be done when Positioning Lock is set. To send location information, set Positioning Lock to ***OFF***.
- Even if ***Always Ask*** or ***Send*** is specified for location information send setting, location information is not sent if ***Do not Send*** is selected for S! GPS Navi location information send setting (***LocationProperty***).

Settings for View Timer

Start Here [■] ➡ *TV* ➡ [■] ➡ *Settings* ➡ [■] ▶

Set Alarm Volume for Timer Notification	▶ *Notification* ➡ [■] ➡ *Alarm Volume* ➡ [■] ➡ Set volume level ➡ [■]
Set Vibration for Timer Notification	▶ *Notification* ➡ [■] ➡ *Vibration* ➡ [■] ➡ *ON* or *OFF* ➡ [■]

Settings for Playing Music

Start Here ■ ➡ ***Media Player*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Audio*** ➡ ■ ▶

Set Audio Output	▶ ***Output Settings*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Speaker/Earphone*** or ***Wireless*** ➡ ■ ● When ***Wireless*** is selected: Select a paired Bluetooth® compatible device ➡ ■ ● For details on pairing a Bluetooth® compatible device, see page 12-5 as well as the instruction manual for the device.
Set Wallpaper During Playback	▶ ***Player Image*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Original*** or ***Ku-man*** ➡ ■

S! Appli Settings

Operational Settings

Start Here ■ ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ■ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ▶

Change Sound Effect Volume	▶ ***Volume*** ➡ ■ ➡ Set volume level ➡ ■
Set Backlight	▶ ***Backlight*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***ON/OFF*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Always ON***, ***Always OFF*** or ***Same as Phone*** ➡ ■
Set Flashing of Backlight	▶ ***Backlight*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Blink*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ➡ ■
Set Vibration	▶ ***Vibration*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ➡ ■
Set Priority While Running S! Appli	
Set Priority When a Voice/Video Call Arrives	▶ ***Calls&Alarms*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Voice Call*** or ***Video Call*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Pause Apps*** or ***Continue Apps*** ➡ ■
Set Priority When a Message Arrives	▶ ***Calls&Alarms*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Message*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Pause Apps*** or ***Continue Apps*** ➡ ■
Set Priority When Alarm is Activated	▶ ***Calls&Alarms*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Alarm*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Pause Apps*** or ***Continue Apps*** ➡ ■

Other Settings

Start Here ■ ➡ *S! Appli* ➡ ■ ▶

Set Confirmation Window for Making Calls or Network Connection	▶ ***Library*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select an S! Appli ➡ Y! ➡ ***Security*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select a function ➡ ■ ➡ ***Blanket***, ***Session***, ***Oneshot*** or ***No*** ➡ ■
Update S! Appli Information on Memory Card	▶ ***Card Sync*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***YES*** ➡ ■
View S! Appli License Information	▶ ***Information*** ➡ ■
Check S! Appli Root Certificates	▶ ***Certification*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select a certificate ➡ ■

Resetting Handset to Default

Start Here ■➡*Settings*➡■➡*Security*➡■➡*Reset*➡■▶

Return All Settings to Default and Delete All Data Stored on Handset	▶*Reset All*➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡*YES*➡■
Reset All Settings to Default	▶*Reset Setting*➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡*YES*➡■
Delete All Phone Book Entries, Files in Data Folder and Messages	▶*Clear Memory*➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡*YES*➡■
Reset Confirmation Windows to Default	▶*Confirmation*➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡*YES*➡■

- Files or information saved on USIM Card and memory card are not restored after resetting handset.
- ***Reset All*** or ***Clear Memory*** are unavailable when there is data created by a Lifestyle-Appli on the IC card. Moreover, ***Reset All*** cannot be performed when Web restriction under Restricted Mode is set to ***ON***. Delete the data created by the Lifestyle-Appli and set Web restriction to ***OFF*** to perform reset operations.
- Performing ***Reset All*** or ***Clear Memory*** deletes some preinstalled S! Appli and contents, which cannot be restored to the status at the time of purchase.

Text Entry Settings

Start Here In a text entry window➡ ✉ ➡***Customize***➡ ■ ▶

Change Input Method	▶***Input Method***➡ ■ ➡***Standard*** or ***Beeper***➡ ■
Do Not Show Word Suggestions from Entered Text	▶***Prediction***➡ ■ ➡***Predict Text***➡ ■ ➡***OFF***➡ ■
Do Not Predict Next Phrase from Entered Phrases	▶***Prediction***➡ ■ ➡***Phrase***➡ ■ ➡***OFF***➡ ■
Set Custom Window	▶***Custom Window***➡ ■ ➡***Add to Window***➡ ■ (twice) ➡Enter symbols and pictographs ➡ ■
Show/Hide Custom Window	▶***Custom Window***➡ ■ ➡***Display***➡ ■ ➡***Display*** or ***Do not Display***➡ ■ ● When ***Display*** is set, Custom Window appears in text entry windows so that you can quickly enter symbols and pictographs that are saved to Custom Window.
Set Text Deletion Method	▶***Clear Setting***➡ ■ ➡***Delete*** or ***Back Space***➡ ■ ● When ***Delete*** is set, pressing クリア/メモ deletes a character to the right of the cursor; when ***Back Space*** is set, pressing クリア/メモ deletes a character to the left of the cursor.
Reset Prediction Dictionary/Conversion Dictionary	▶***Reset Learned***➡ ■ ➡***Prediction*** or ***Conversion***➡ ■ ➡***YES***➡ ■

Phone Book Settings

Start Here ■ ➡ ***Phone Book*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Settings*** ➡ ■ ▶

Change Storage Location	▶ ***Select Storage*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Always Ask***, ***Phone Memory***, ***USIM*** or ***Memory Card*** ➡ ■
Prohibit Use of Phone Book	▶ ***Phone Book Lock*** ➡ ■ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ***Lock*** ➡ ■ ● If you want to use Phone Book, enter Handset Code to temporarily unlock Phone Book Lock.

● If Phone Book Lock is set to ***Lock***, Speed Dial is unavailable to make calls.

Settings for Phone Book Groups

Edit a Group Name/Group Icon	■ ➡ ***Phone Book*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Group*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select a group ➡ ■ ➡ Select the group name ➡ ■ ➡ Enter a group name ➡ ■ ➡ Select a group icon ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ ● Press Y! and select ***To USIM*** or ***To Phone*** to switch between handset and USIM Card.

Settings for Bluetooth® Communication

Start Here ■➡*Settings*➡■➡*Connectivity*➡■➡*Bluetooth*➡■▶

Check Details of a Paired Bluetooth® Compatible Device	▶*Paired Device*➡■➡Select a device➡■
Set a Bluetooth® Compatible Device as Trusted Device If you set a paired Bluetooth® compatible device as trusted device, a confirmation window does not appear and a connection is established when a connection request is received from that device.	▶*Paired Device*➡■➡Select a device➡Y!➡*Trust Device*➡■➡*ON*➡■
Check Details of Handset	▶*Settings*➡■➡*Details*➡■
Change Name of Handset	▶*Settings*➡■➡*Device Name*➡■➡Enter a device name of handset➡■
Communicate Using a Handsfree Device	▶*Settings*➡■➡*Set Handsfree*➡■➡*Handsfree*➡■ ● To make and receive regular calls on handset, select *Private*.
Hide Handset	▶*Settings*➡■➡*Visibility*➡■➡*Hide*➡■

- If handset receives a connection request from a device and you register the device to the paired device list by entering an authentication PIN code, a part of the device information is not shown.

Settings for PC Connection

Use USB Cable for Charging ■ ➡*Settings*➡ ■ ➡*Connectivity*➡ ■ ➡*USB*➡ ■ ➡*Battery*➡ ■ ➡*ON*➡ ■

- Charging is not possible while the PC or handset is turned off.
- Charging may not be possible depending on the connection settings of the PC.
- If handset and a PC are connected with the USB cable, either the PC battery or handset battery is consumed depending on the Battery setting, regardless of whether they are communicating data.
  ON: PC battery is used.
  OFF: Handset battery is used.

Settings for Saving Events

Start Here ■ ➡*Tools*➡■➡*Calendar*➡■➡✉➡Enter basic items (page 9-4) ▶

Change Alarm Volume	▶*Alarm*➡■➡*ON*➡■➡*Volume*➡■➡Set volume level➡■➡✉ (twice) ➡*OK*➡■
Change Vibration	▶*Alarm*➡■➡*ON*➡■➡*Vibration*➡■➡Select a pattern➡■➡✉ (twice) ➡*OK*➡■
Set an Image to Appear at Set Time	
Set Default Image	▶*Alarm*➡■➡*ON*➡■➡*Image*➡■➡*Original*➡■➡✉ (twice) ➡*OK*➡■
Set an Image in Data Folder/Memory Card	▶*Alarm*➡■➡*ON*➡■➡*Image*➡■➡*Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*➡■➡Select an image➡■➡✥ to compose the image➡Y!➡■➡✉ (twice) ➡*OK*➡■
Set a Stamp Icon	▶*Stamp Icon*➡■➡Select a stamp➡■➡✉➡*OK*➡■
Set Category	▶*Options*➡■➡*Category*➡■➡Select a category➡■➡✉➡*OK*➡■
Set a Phone Number/E-mail Address/URL	▶*Phone Number*, *Address* or *URL*➡■➡Enter a phone number, e-mail address, or URL➡■➡✉➡*OK*➡■
Set Link Information (Message/Web Page/Image)	▶*Messages*, *Screen Memo* or *Pictures*➡■➡Select a message, web page, or image➡■➡✉➡*OK*➡■
Set a Location	▶*Location*➡■➡Enter a location➡■➡✉➡*OK*➡■

Settings for Calendar

Start Here ■➡*Tools*➡■➡*Calendar*➡■➡Y!➡*Settings*➡■▶

Set Start-up View of Calendar	▶*First View*➡■➡Select a view format➡■
Change Font Color of Events	▶*Font Color*➡■➡Select a font color➡■
Lock Calendar	▶*Calendar Lock*➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡*Lock*➡■

- When Calendar Lock is set, event titles do not appear at the event alarm activation time. Handset Code entry is also required to view event details.

Settings for Saving Tasks

Start Here ■➡*Tools*➡■➡*Tasks*➡■➡Y!➡*Create New*➡■➡Enter basic items (page 9-5)▶

Change Alarm Volume	▶*Alarm*➡■➡*ON*➡■➡*Volume*➡■➡Set volume level➡■➡✉ (twice)➡*OK*➡■
Change Vibration	▶*Alarm*➡■➡*ON*➡■➡*Vibration*➡■➡Select a pattern➡■➡✉ (twice)➡*OK*➡■
Set an Image to Appear at Set Time	
Set Default Image	▶*Alarm*➡■➡*ON*➡■➡*Image*➡■➡*Original*➡■➡✉ (twice) ➡*OK*➡■
Set an Image in Data Folder/Memory Card	▶*Alarm*➡■➡*ON*➡■➡*Image*➡■➡*Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*➡■➡Select an image➡■➡✥ to compose the image➡Y!➡■➡✉ (twice) ➡*OK*➡■
Set a Stamp Icon	▶*Stamp Icon*➡■➡Select a stamp➡■➡✉➡*OK*➡■
Set Task Priority	▶*Options*➡■➡*Priority*➡■➡Select a priority➡■➡✉➡*OK*➡■
Set Task Status	▶*Options*➡■➡*Status*➡■➡Select a status➡■➡✉➡*OK*➡■

Settings for Tasks

Lock Tasks	■➡*Tools*➡■➡*Tasks*➡■➡Y!➡*Settings*➡■➡*Tasks Lock*➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡*Lock*➡■

- When Tasks Lock is set, task titles do not appear at the task alarm activation time. Handset Code entry is also required to view task details.

Time Table Settings

Start Here ■➡*Tools*➡■➡*Useful Tools*➡■➡*Time Table*➡■➡Y!➡*Settings*➡■▶

Set Start/End Time of a Period	▶*Set Time*➡■➡Select a period➡■➡Enter a start time➡■➡Enter an end time➡■➡✉ ● Enter times in the 24-hour system.
Reset Time Settings to Default	▶*Reset Time*➡■➡*YES*➡■

Settings for Osaifu-Keitai®

Start Here ■➡*Tools*➡■➡*Osaifu-Keitai*➡■➡*Card Settings*➡■▶

Set Whether Functions Start Up When Handset is Held Up to a Reader/Writer	▶*Interface*➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡Select a function➡■➡*ON* or *OFF*➡■
Check IC Card Information	▶*IC Card Status*➡■ ● You cannot check the contents of an IC card that is locked.
Do Not Send a Lock Engaged Notification	▶*Remote Lock*➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡*Mail Lock*➡■➡*Notification*➡■➡*Do not Send*➡■

Settings for S! GPS Navi

Start Here ■➡*Tools*➡■➡*S! GPS Navi*➡■➡*NAVI Settings*➡■ ▶

Save a Map URL	▶*Map URL Settings*➡■➡Select an empty item➡[Y!]➡*Edit URL*➡■➡Enter a URL ➡■
Edit Map URL Display Name	▶*Map URL Settings*➡■➡Select a map URL➡[Y!]➡*Rename*➡■➡Edit the display name➡■
Edit Map URL	▶*Map URL Settings*➡■➡Select a map URL➡[Y!]➡*Edit URL*➡■➡*YES*➡■➡ Edit the URL➡■ ● The preset map URL cannot be edited.
Delete a Map URL	▶*Map URL Settings*➡■➡Select a map URL➡[Y!]➡*Delete*➡■➡*YES*➡■ ● The preset map URL cannot be deleted.
Set Map URL	▶*Map URL Settings*➡■➡Select a map URL➡■
Set Navi Appli	▶*Set Navi Appli*➡■➡Select a navigation application➡■ ● When the application becomes unavailable due to USIM Card replacement, perform Reset All or Clear Memory (page 13-33).
Lock Positioning	▶*Positioning Lock*➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡*ON*➡■
Set Location Information Send Setting	▶*LocationProperty*➡■➡[□]➡■➡Enter Handset Code➡*Always Ask*, *Send* or *Do not Send*➡■

Alarm Settings

Start Here ■ ➡ ***Tools*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Alarms*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select an alarm ➡ ■ ➡ Enter basic items (page 9-18) ➡ ***Alarm Tone*** ➡ ■ ▶

Change Alarm Volume	▶ ***Volume*** ➡ ■ ➡ Set volume level ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ (twice) ➡ ***OK*** ➡ ■
Change Vibration	▶ ***Vibration*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select a pattern ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ (twice) ➡ ***OK*** ➡ ■
Set an Image to Appear at Set Time	
Set Default Image	▶ ***Image*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Original*** ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ (twice) ➡ ***OK*** ➡ ■
Set an Image in Data Folder/Memory Card	▶ ***Image*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Phone Memory*** or ***Memory Card*** ➡ ■ ➡ Select an image ➡ ■ ➡ ✥ to compose the image ➡ Y! ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ (twice) ➡ ***OK*** ➡ ■

World Clock Settings

Start Here ■ ➡ ***Settings*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Phone Settings*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***Clock*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***World Clock*** ➡ ■ ▶

Set a City by GMT Time Difference	▶ ***City 1*** or ***City 2*** ➡ ■ ➡ Y! ➡ ***GMT Offset*** ➡ ■ ➡ ↕ to select a time difference ➡ ■ (twice)
Set Daylight Saving Time (DST)	▶ ***City 1*** or ***City 2*** ➡ ■ ➡ Y! ➡ ***DST ON/OFF*** ➡ ■ ➡ ***ON*** or ***OFF*** ➡ ■

S! Information Channel Settings

Start Here ■ ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ■ ➡ *Info Channel* ➡ ■ ▶

Do Not Show Weather Indicator in Standby	▶ *Weather* ➡ ■ ➡ *View Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Indicator* ➡ ■ ➡ *Hide* ➡ ■
Set Notification of Weather Forecast Updates Set whether or not to notify of weather forecast updates by Information Prompt.	▶ *Weather* ➡ ■ ➡ *View Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Prompt* ➡ ■ ➡ *Show* or *Hide* ➡ ■

Setting Ku-man for Standby (Japanese)

Set Ku-man, a 3D animated character, to appear in Standby. Ku-man changes his outfit according to the seasons and time of the day, and makes all sorts of comments with various gestures.

Set Ku-man to Appear in Standby	■ ➡ *設定* (Settings) ➡ ■ ➡ *待受くーまん* (Idle Screen) ➡ ■ ➡ *ON* or *OFF* ➡ ■

- To make Ku-man appear in Standby, you need to set 言語選択 (Language) to 日本語 (Japanese). Ku-man does not appear when S! Quick News information is being selected in Standby.

Settings for S! Friend's Status

Start Here ■ ➡ *Communications* ➡ ■ ➡ *Friend Status* ➡ ■ ▶

Edit Status Settings of My Status	▶ Y! ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Status Setting* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an item ➡ ■ ➡ *Icon* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an icon ➡ ■ ➡ *Label* ➡ ■ ➡ Enter a label ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ ➡ *YES* ➡ ■
Set All Answer Statuses Collectively	▶ Y! ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Status Setting* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an item ➡ ■ ➡ *Set All* ➡ ■ ➡ Select an item ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ ➡ *YES* ➡ ■
Save Members to Active Window	▶ ◀▶ to select a group ➡ ▲▼ to select a member ➡ Y! ➡ *Active Window* ➡ ■ (twice) ➡ *Not Registered* ➡ ■
Ignore Saving Requests from People Not in Phone Book	▶ Y! ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Request Reply* ➡ ■ ➡ *Known Only* ➡ ■
Ignore All Saving Requests	▶ Y! ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Request Reply* ➡ ■ ➡ *Do not Answer* ➡ ■

Settings for S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk

Disable S! Friend's Status/S! Circle Talk	■ ➡ *Settings* ➡ ■ ➡ *Security* ➡ ■ ➡ *IP Service* ➡ ■ ➡ *OFF* ➡ ■

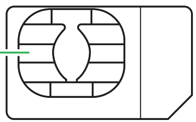
- Before configuring the IP Service setting, you need to retrieve the network connection information (page 1-12).

14 Appendix

Handling USIM Card

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including handset number, and limited storage for Phone Book entries and SMS messages. USIM Card must be inserted to use handset and Network services (calling, messaging, Web, etc.). Turn handset off before inserting/removing USIM Card.

- Save SMS messages and Phone Book entries on USIM Card (pages 4-19, 13-35).
- Insert USIM Card into compatible SoftBank handsets to access files.
- Do not insert USIM Card into any other IC card device. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Keep the IC chip clean.
- Use a dry, soft cloth to clean USIM Card.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card. Doing so may damage handset.
- For details on USIM Card, refer to the instruction manual provided with USIM Card.



- USIM Cards are the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Cards will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Cards to SoftBank upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice. Preinstalled S! Appli may become unavailable if a different USIM Card is inserted.
- Back up USIM Card information. SoftBank is not liable for lost information.
- If your USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank General Information (page 14-48).

USIM Codes (PIN/PIN2)

For security, USIM Card has two security codes: PIN and PIN2. Do not forget these codes and do not reveal them to others.

- PIN and PIN2 can be changed (page 11-5).
- The default setting is 9999 for both PIN and PIN2.

PIN

This is a four to eight digit security code to prevent others from using your handset. When PIN Settings is set to ***ON***, PIN entry is required each time handset is turned on.

PIN2

This is a four to eight digit security code required for changing data stored on USIM Card, such as resetting Call Time&Cost.

PIN Lock & PUK Codes

PIN Lock or PIN2 Lock is activated when PIN or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times. PUK (Personal Unblocking Key) codes are required to cancel PIN Lock and PIN2 Lock. To obtain PUK and PUK2, contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-48).

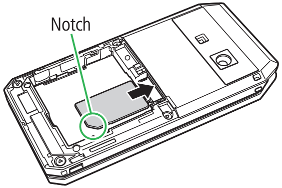
- If PUK or PUK2 is incorrectly entered ten consecutive times, USIM Card is locked. USIM Card Lock cannot be canceled. Contact SoftBank General Information (page 14-48).

Inserting and Removing USIM Card

Before inserting or removing USIM Card, turn off handset and remove the battery.

Insertion

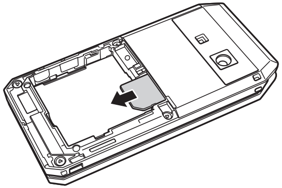
1 With IC (page 14-2) facing down, slide USIM Card in the direction shown



2 Push USIM Card completely in until it stops

Removal

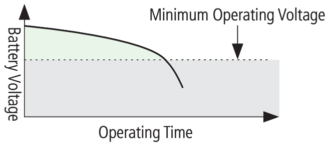
1 Slide out USIM Card



- Avoid touching or scratching USIM Card's IC. Do not force USIM Card into or out of handset; damage may result.
- Take care not to lose USIM Card after removing it from handset.

Battery

- Before using your handset for the first time, charge the battery.
- Handset uses a lithium ion battery. Battery voltage decreases with operating time (see below).



- Extreme temperatures will reduce battery capacity and shorten the operating time. Do not use the battery in high temperatures. This may shorten battery life.
- When storing the battery separately, make sure you put it in a case, etc. and store it in a dry and cool place. This will avoid short-circuiting the battery terminal. It is recommended that you store it uncharged.
- Repeatedly charging and discharging a battery shortens the operating time. If the operating time becomes too short, purchase a new battery.
- When disposing of a used battery, insulate the terminal with tape or place the battery into a plastic bag and then take it to your nearest SoftBank Shop, a recycle shop or follow the local disposal regulations for environmental conservation.
- Be careful not to drop or apply excessive force to the battery.

Battery Drain

- The battery discharges little by little when stored for a long time even if it is not used. It self-discharges at a rate of 10 to 20% per month and about 50% per half a year.
- If handset is used in a location with poor signal reception or left in Standby outside the service area, or if you use Mobile Light or launch S! Appli, it will shorten the battery's operating time.

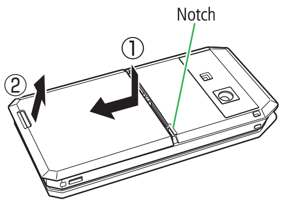
Battery Level

- The battery level on Display (page 1-4) changes with the operating time. Charge or replace the battery when the level is low. When the battery is about to run out (), a message appears and the battery alarm sounds. Handset shuts down after 30 seconds.

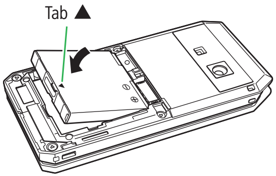
Battery Installation

- Do not remove battery while handset power is on.

1 Pressing down around the notch, slide the battery cover (①), and lift it up (②)

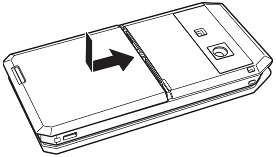


2 Align terminals and insert the battery



- Always remove the battery from the tab (above ▲). Otherwise the terminals may be damaged.

3 Replace the battery cover



Appendix

14

Check if software on handset needs to be updated, and update it through the network.

- Connection fees do not apply to updates.
- There are two ways to update software: ***Update now*** and ***Schedule update***.
  - · Update now: Update software now.
  - · Schedule update: Set a date and time to update software so that software is updated automatically at the set time.
- Software updates may take a long time.
- Update software when the battery is fully charged. Do not remove the battery while updating.
- Update software in a place where handset has a good reception, and do not change locations while updating.
- You cannot use other functions during updates. If a program is running, software update is not available.
- You can update software without deleting Phone Book entries, images and sounds saved on handset. However, data may be lost or damaged if handset is not in good condition (broken, damaged, wet, etc.). We recommend that you make backups of your important data.

- If software update fails, you may not be able to operate your handset. In this case, contact SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 14-48).

Updating Software

1 **Press ■ ➡ *Tools* ➡ ■ ➡ *Update* ➡ ■ ➡ *YES* ➡ ■**

2 **Select *Agree* ➡ ■ (twice) ➡ Enter Center Access Code (page 1-16) ➡ ■ ➡ ✉ (OK)**

- The check result appears. Follow the onscreen instructions.

After Software is Updated

When software is updated, handset restarts automatically. After restarting, a confirmation window appears showing update information.

Using Schedule Update

A confirmation window for software update appears on the scheduled time. Press ■ or leave handset for about ten seconds to start automatic software update.

- If you are using another function on handset on the scheduled time, software is not updated.
- If handset is out of the service area on the scheduled time, software is not updated.

Problem	Possible Causes and Remedies
Cannot turn the power on.	Is the battery inserted properly (page 14-5)?
	Has the battery run out (page 14-4)?
***Please check connection with your charger*. appears and cannot charge the battery.**	Is there dust on the terminals of AC Charger, External Device Port or battery? Clean the terminals with a dry cotton swab, etc.
Cannot operate handset normally after turning it on.	Does the PIN Entry window appear? PIN Settings is set to ***ON***, enter PIN.
	Does [key icon] or ***Password Lock*** appear on Display? Password Lock is activated. Enter Handset Code.
	Does ***USIM not inserted. Power off the phone and insert USIM***. appear on Display? Turn the power off and make sure USIM Card is inserted properly (page 14-3).
Cannot establish a connection for voice calls and Video Calls or use mail and Web functions.	Does [Out icon] appear on Display? Are you out of the service area or in a location where it is difficult to receive a signal? Move to a location where a signal can reach handset and try again.
	Are you using handset outside Japan? Set the network system (3G/GSM) and the operator available in the country/region you are visiting (page 13-22).
	Is your hand or an object covering Internal Antenna area (page 1-3)?
	Does [Offline icon] or ***Offline Mode*** appear on Display? Cancel Offline Mode (page 1-15).
Cannot make voice calls and Video Calls.	Did you dial the whole phone number starting from the area code?
	Does ***Network busy***. appear on Display? The line is busy. Wait a while and try again.
	Is Call Barring (page 3-17) set for outgoing calls?
Cannot receive voice calls and Video Calls.	Is Reject Calls (page 13-9) set?
	Is Call Forwarding (page 3-10) or Voice Mail (page 3-11) set to ***All Calls***?
	Is Call Barring (page 3-17) set for incoming calls?

Problem	Possible Causes and Remedies
Cannot send messages.	Is Call Barring (page 3-17) set for outgoing calls?
Cannot receive messages.	Is Call Barring (page 3-17) set for incoming calls?
Calls are interrupted or disconnected.	Does Out appear on Display? Are you in a location where it is difficult to receive a signal? Move to a location where a signal can reach handset.
	Is your hand or an object covering Internal Antenna area (page 1-3)?
Handset does not respond to key presses.	Does or ***Password Lock*** appear on Display? Password Lock is activated. Enter Handset Code.
Cannot use Osaifu-Keitai®.	Does appear on Display? Cancel IC Card Lock (page 9-12).

Standard Mode

Key / Text Input Mode	Kanji (hiragana) (Double-byte)*	Single-byte katakana	Double-byte alphanumerics (upper case) Single-byte alphanumerics (upper case)	Double-byte alphanumerics (lower case) Single-byte alphanumerics (lower case)	Double-byte numbers Single-byte numbers
1 .@あ	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ	ｱｲｳｴｵｧｨｩｪｫ	.@－＿1	.@－＿1	1
2 ABCか	かきくけこ	ｶｷｸｹｺ	ABC2	abc2	2
3 DEFさ	さしすせそ	ｻｼｽｾｿ	DEF3	def3	3
4 GHIた	たちつてとっ	ﾀﾁﾂﾃﾄｯ	GHI4	ghi4	4
5 JKLな	なにぬねの	ﾅﾆﾇﾈﾉ	JKL5	jkl5	5
6 MNOは	はひふへほ	ﾊﾋﾌﾍﾎ	MNO6	mno6	6
7 PQRSま	まみむめも	ﾏﾐﾑﾒﾓ	PQRS7	pqrs7	7
8 TUVや	やゆよゃゅょ	ﾔﾕﾖｬｭｮ	TUV8	tuv8	8
9 WXYZら	らりるれろ	ﾗﾘﾙﾚﾛ	WXYZ9	wxyz9	9
0 +-、。わ	わをんー、。	ﾜｦﾝｰ､｡	～／？！0	～／？！0	0
＊ ゛゜絵	Custom, Pictographs, Emoticons, ゛(dakuten), ゜(handakuten), ー(cho-on), 、(touten), 。(kuten)	Custom, ﾞ (dakuten), ﾟ (handakuten), ｰ(cho-on), ､(touten), ｡(kuten)	Custom, Pictographs, Emoticons		Custom, Pictographs, Emoticons
# A/a記号	Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL Toggle case	Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL Toggle case	Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL Toggle case		Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL
	Determine entered text/End text entry				End text entry
	Move cursor, Insert line break with , Scroll through suggestions with	Move cursor	Move cursor, Insert line break with		
クリア/メモ	Delete entered characters				
TV 文字	Toggle characters in reverse order				—

* When entering a reading to Word List (page 2-15), you can enter only double-byte hiragana and "ー" (cho-on).

Beeper Mode

Switch the input method to Beeper mode. Enter two digits to make one character. Key combinations are as follows:

Press first \ Press next	1.@あ	2ABCか	3DEFさ	4GHIた	5JKLな	6MNOは	7PQRSま	8TUVや	9WXYZら	0+-ゎわ
1.@あ	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
2ABCか	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
3DEFさ	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
4GHIた	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
5JKLな	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
6MNOは	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	—	／
7PQRSま	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&			
8TUVや	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	*	#			
9WXYZら	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
0+-ゎわ	わ	を	ん	゛	゜	6	7	8	9	0

- ▭ indicates upper and lower cases are available. Press #A/a記号 to switch case immediately after character entry.
- When entering in A and a, all the characters will be single-byte.
- When entering in Ａ, ａ, A, and a, hiragana will turn to katakana.
- When entering in ａ and a, the characters will be in lower case.

Entering Characters in Beeper Mode

Example: Entering よしお

1 **In a text entry window, press** 8TUVや 5JKLな ➡ 3DEFさ 2ABCか ➡ 1.@あ 5JKLな ➡ ■

Appendix

14

Simple Mode Function List

Functions available in Simple Mode are listed below.

- To use functions that are unavailable in Simple Mode, access the full menu (page 2-26).
- Settings made in Simple Mode are reflected in the full menu.

Main Menu

Menu Item		Description	Page
Settings		Refer to "Settings" of Simple Mode Main Menu.	14-14
My Number	**Name**	Same functions as in full mode	3-3
	Reading		3-3
	Phone Number		3-3
	E-mail Address		3-3
	Full Menu	Same as My Details menu in full mode	3-3
Tools	**TV**	Same functions as in full mode	6-2
	Alarms	Up to six alarms can be set.	9-18
	Notepad	Same functions as in full mode	9-8
	Calculator		9-20
	Dictionary		9-20
	Calendar	Monthly View only Impossible to save, edit and delete events	9-4
	Scan Data	Same functions as in full mode	9-25
	Kitchen Timer		9-21
	S! GPS Navi		9-14
	Ku-man's Room		9-26
	Full Menu	Same as Tools menu in full mode	Chap. 9,13,14
Full Menu		Same as Main Menu in full mode	2-26

Menu Item		Description	Page
Phone Book	Phone Book	Same functions as in full mode	2-19
	Video Call		3-7
	New Entry		2-17
	Call Log		3-9
	Group		13-35
	Full Menu	Same as Phone Book menu in full mode	Chap. 2
Phone Book Search		Same functions as in full mode	2-19
Add to Phone Book			2-17
Messaging	Message Box		4-10
	Create New		4-4, 4-6
	Retrieve New		4-8
	Drafts		4-10
	Templates		4-5
	Unsent		4-10
	Full Menu	Same as Messaging menu in full mode	Chap. 4
Message Box	Received/Sent	Same functions as in full mode	4-10
	Drafts		4-10
	Unsent		4-10
Create Message	Create New		4-4, 4-6
	Templates		4-5

Combinations of menu items in ▢ vary according to the menu pattern.

Menu Item		Description	Page
Manner Mode		Set/cancel Manner Mode.	1-14
Alarms		Up to six alarms can be set.	9-18
Camera	**Mobile**	Same functions as in full mode	7-3
	Digital		7-3
	Video		7-5
	Full Menu	Same as Camera menu in full mode	Chap. 7
Data Folder		Same functions as in full mode	2-22
Yahoo! Keitai	**Yahoo! Keitai**		5-3
	Bookmarks	Impossible to set/cancel Security Lock	5-6
	Screen Memo	Same functions as in full mode	5-6
	Enter URL		5-3
	Manufacture #		13-19
	Full Menu	Same as Yahoo! Keitai menu in full mode	Chap. 5

Combinations of menu items in ▭ vary according to the menu pattern.

"Settings" of Simple Mode Main Menu

Menu Item		Description	Page
Idle Screen	**Wallpaper**	Same functions as in full mode	2-7
	Clock/Calendar	Mini Clock cannot be set.	2-8
	Ku-man	Same functions as in full mode	13-43
Font Settings	**Font Type**		13-5
	Font Size	Can only be set to Large/Medium for General.	13-5
Sounds	**Incoming**	Can only be set for Voice Call/Video Call/Message.	13-11
	Earpiece Vol.	Same functions as in full mode	3-12
	Keypad Tone Vol.		13-13
Manner Mode	**ON/OFF**	Set/cancel Manner Mode.	1-14
	Switch Mode	Switch Manner Modes (Original Modes cannot be edited).	13-11
Mini Tool	**Mini Tool**	Same functions as in full mode	13-3
	Mini Photo		13-4
VM/Call Fwd	**Voice Mail ON**		3-11
	Deactivate All		3-11
	Listen VM		3-11
	Ans Machine		3-6
Security	**Password Lock**		11-3
	Reject Calls		13-9
	Anti-Spam		13-16
	Change Password		11-2

Menu Item		Description	Page
Clock	**Date&Time**	Same functions as in full mode	1-13
	12hour/24hour		1-13
	World Clock		9-19
Intl. Calls	**SelectNetwork**		13-22
	Operator	Impossible to set priority and add operators	13-22
Save 1-touch		A Phone Book entry can be assigned to either Softkey to make calls/send messages.	2-27
Full Menu		Same as Settings menu in full mode	Chap. 12,13
SimpleMode OFF		Cancel Simple Mode.	2-6

Functions Available in Standby

Operation	Function	Description	Page
	Main Menu	Refer to "Main Menu".	2-5
(Press and hold)	**Keypad Lock**	Same functions as in full mode	11-3
	My Number	Same as My Number in Main Menu	3-3
	Active Window	Same functions as in full mode	2-8
(Press and hold)	**Calendar**		9-4
	Phone Book Search		2-19
	Dialed Numbers		3-9
(Press and hold)	**Sent Message Log**		4-13
	Received Calls		3-9
(Press and hold)	**Received Message Log**		4-13

Operation	Function	Description	Page
[シンプル], [Y!]	**Use 1-touch entries**	Make voice calls/Video Calls/send messages to assigned 1-touch entries.	2-27
[シンプル] **(Press and hold)**	**Simple Mode Off**	Cancel Simple Mode.	2-6
[Y!] **(Press and hold)**	**Barcode Reader for Keitaideco**	Same functions as in full mode	2-32
[TV]	**Activate TV**		6-3
[ショートカット]	**Shortcuts Menu**	Impossible to add functions to Shortcuts Menu	2-4
[ショートカット] **(Press and hold)**	**Information Prompt**	Same functions as in full mode	1-6
[クリア/メモ]	**Play Answering Machine**		3-6
[クリア/メモ] **(Press and hold)**	**Answering Machine On/Off**		3-6
[#A/a記号] **(Press and hold)**	**Manner Mode On/Off**		1-14
[イルミ]/[カメラ]*	**Toggle views on External Display**		1-5
[イルミ] **(Press and hold)**	**Twinkle Light On**		13-6
[カメラ]	**Activate camera**		7-3
[カメラ] **(Press and hold)**	**Activate video camera**		7-5
[カメラ] **(Press and hold)***	**Activate set function**		2-4

* Available while handset is closed

Main Specifications

Frequency Range	3G	1920 to 2170 MHz
	GSM900	880 to 960 MHz
	DCS1800	1710 to 1880 MHz
	PCS1900	1850 to 1990 MHz
Continuous Talk Time	3G	Approx. 250 min. (Twinkle Light Off)
	Video Call	Approx. 120 min.
	GSM	Approx. 190 min. (Twinkle Light Off)
Continuous Standby Time	3G	Approx. 490 hrs
	GSM	Approx. 320 hrs
Charging Time		Approx. 120 min.
Dimensions When Closed (W×H×D)		Approx. 50×103×15 mm
Maximum Output	3G	Class 3 0.25 W
	GSM900	Class 4 2 W
	DCS1800	Class 1 1 W
	PCS1900	Class 1 1 W
Weight		Approx. 111 g

- The values above were calculated with the battery attached.
- The continuous talk time refers to the average length of time a signal can be received normally when handset is in a stationary state and a new fully charged battery is attached.
- The continuous standby time refers to the average length of time a signal can be received normally when handset is closed with External Display facing outward, handset is in a stationary state, a new fully charged battery is attached and there are no calls made/received or operations performed. If handset is in a location outside the service area or where it is difficult to receive a signal (in a building, vehicle, bag, etc.), this time may be reduced to half or less. This time may also be affected by other factors such as the operating environment (battery state, temperature, etc.). The continuous standby time for 3G was measured with ***SelectNetwork*** under ***Intl. Calls*** set to ***3G***.

- The operating time of the battery was calculated when a stable signal was received constantly. However, this time may be reduced to half or less if handset is used in a location where the signal is weak or handset is left in Standby when it is outside the service area. Repeated charging and discharging a battery shortens the operating time. If the operating time becomes too short, purchase a new battery.
- If Mobile Light is used frequently for taking pictures and recording videos or as a penlight, the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become shorter.
- When an S! Appli is activated, the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become significantly shorter.
- If handset is used with Display illuminated frequently (for Yahoo! Keitai use, etc.), the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become shorter.
- Note that the LCD Display may have defective pixels (dead or stuck pixels).

AC Charger (Sold Separately)

Input Voltage	100 to 240 V AC, 50/60 Hz
Charging Temperature Range	5 to 35℃

Specifications by Function

Basic Operations

Text Entry

Word List	100 words (4 words with same reading), 12 characters per word, 8 characters per reading
Clipboard	20 entries

Phone Book

Number of Entries	1,000 entries
Name	16 characters each for first and last names
Reading	16 characters each for first and last names
Phone Number	5 numbers, 32 digits
E-mail Address	5 addresses, 128 characters
Address	Postal code: 20 digits, country: 32 characters, state/city/street/additional info: 64 characters each
Job Title	32 characters
Company	32 characters
URL	128 characters
Note	256 characters
Group	20 groups, group name: 16 characters

Data Folder

Available Memory	Approx. 51 MB*1, 2,500 entries*2
File Name	32 characters

*1 Memory capacity when all files that can be deleted are deleted. Data Folder shares its memory with S! Appli Library.

*2 This number does not include S! Appli and Lifestyle-Appli entries. Up to 100 S! Appli and Lifestyle-Appli items can be stored.

Others

Active Window	5 members on Members List
Shortcuts Menu	40 entries (13 preset)

Call

Dialed, Received		20 entries each
Answering Machine		5 messages, 30 seconds per message
Voice Record During Calls		60 seconds per recording
Number Memo		5 numbers, 32 digits
International Call Service	**Country Number List**	20 countries (17 preset)
Send Touch Tones		32 digits

Messaging

Available Memory	Received	Approx. 5 MB, 2,000 messages
	Sent, Unsent	Approx. 1.5 MB, 600 messages
	Drafts	Approx. 700 KB, 60 messages
Address		To/Cc/Bcc: total 20 entries, phone number: 24 digits, e-mail address: 254 characters
S! Mail Text		Approx. 15,000 double-byte characters/Approx. 30,000 single-byte characters
Attachments		Approx. 300 KB (including Address, Subject, Text)
SMS Text		70 double-byte characters/70 single-byte katakana/160 single-byte alphanumerics
Message Box		20 folders each for Received and Sent (General folder, Folder 1 to Folder 17, Idokoro folder, Ku-man folder)
3D Pictograms		150 characters

Internet

Data Transfer Speed	Maximum 3.6 Mbps receiving/ maximum 384 kbps sending (in 3G HighSpeed areas)
Bookmarks	50 entries
History (URL)	10 entries

TV

View Timer	5 entries
TV Links	50 entries

Camera/Picture Editing

Effective Pixels		1.96 million pixels
File Format		Still pictures: JPEG, videos: MPEG-4
Picture Editing	File Format	JPEG (2.0 MB or less), PNG (1.0 MB or less)
	Picture Size	W16×H16 to W240×H400

Camera Modes

Mode	Picture Size	Max. Zoom
Mobile	W240×H400	Approx. 4×
	W240×H320	Approx. 4.9×
	W144×H176	Approx. 8.3×
	W120×H160	Approx. 9.3×
	W112×H112	Approx. 10.5×
	W96×H128	Approx. 12×
Digital	W1600×H1200	–
	W1280×H960	Approx. 1.3×
	W640×H480	Approx. 2.5×
	W400×H240	Approx. 4×

Video Modes

Mode	Size	Max. Zoom	Max. Recording Time
Video	W320×H240	Approx. 2.5×	Approx. 20 min.
Video Mail	W176×H144	Approx. 2.5×	Approx. 30 sec. (Quality: Fine) Approx. 50 sec. (Quality: Normal) Approx. 60 sec. (Quality: Economy)
Short Video	W128×H96	Approx. 4.1×	Approx. 5 sec.

Media Player

Playlist	10 each on handset and memory card, 50 songs per playlist
My Library	50 songs
Recent	20 entries

Playable Data

- Even under the following conditions, some files may not be playable.
- Although files with bit rates other than those listed below may be playable, their operation is not guaranteed.

	File Format	Bit Rate	Sampling Frequency
Handset	AMR	4.75 to 12.2 kbps	8 kHz
	MPEG-4 AAC-LC	16 to 128 kbps	16 to 48 kHz
	HE-AAC		

- **Notes on AAC data**
  - · AAC encoder software is required for converting music into AAC formats.
  - · SoftBank does not recommend nor guarantee operation of any particular AAC encoder software.
  - · Refer to the website of software provider about specifications and usage of AAC encoder software.

S! Appli

Available Memory on Handset	Approx. 51 MB*1, 100 entries*2

*1 S! Appli Library shares its memory with Data Folder.
*2 This number includes S! Appli and Lifestyle-Appli entries.

Tools

Notepad	20 notepads, 256 characters per notepad
Calendar	400 events (100 events per day), from January 2, 2000 to December 30, 2015
Tasks	100 entries, from January 2, 2000 to December 30, 2015
Time Table	8 periods per day, Monday to Saturday
Dictionary	Japanese dictionary: approx. 40,000 words, English-Japanese dictionary: approx. 65,000 words, Japanese-English dictionary: approx. 36,000 words
Voice Recorder	Maximum 90 minutes per recording
Osaifu-Keitai	8 Call Lock phone numbers, 2 Mail Lock addresses, 8 Balance List entries
World Clock	2 cities, city name:13 characters
S! GPS Navi	20 location logs
Idokoro Mail	Recipients List: 5 entries, Areas List: 7 entries
S! Information Channel	7 History entries, 3 MB
Electronic Books	BookSurfing®: CCF (.CCF), e-Book Viewer: XMDF (.ZBK, .ZBF, .ZBS)
Barcode Reader	QR code data: 10 entries

Communication Services

S! Friend's Status

S! Friend's Status Members List	30 entries, 10 people per group

S! Circle Talk

Participants	11 people including yourself
Talk Time	30 seconds each time
S! Circle Talk Members List	50 entries, 10 people per group

File Transfer/Backup

Infrared

Communication System	IrMC1.1
Transmission Range	Approx. 20 cm

Bluetooth®

Communication System	Bluetooth® specification Ver.1.2
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class 2
Transmission Range	Approx. 10 m radius*1
Supported Bluetooth® Profiles*2	HFP (Hands-Free Profile) HSP (Headset Profile) DUN (Dialup Networking Profile) OPP (Object Push Profile) FTP (File Transfer Profile)*3 A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile)
Frequency Band	2.4 GHz (2.402 GHz to 2.480 GHz)
Searchable Devices	8 devices at a time
Paired Devices	20 devices

*1 Varies depending on obstacles between devices and signal conditions.
*2 The specifications of Bluetooth® devices differ according to usage. There are standards for Bluetooth®.
*3 Only the server function is supported.

Melody List

The preinstalled melodies are shown below.

Ringtones (Fixed Melodies)

- The following are unavailable for Keypad Tone under Sound Effects.

Title	Composer
Meistersinger	WAGNER RICHARD WILHELM
Someday My Prince will Come	CHURCHILL FRANK E.
Aloha Oe	Hawaiian ballad
Wooden Soldiers	JESSEL LEON
Jupiter	HOLST GUSTAV
Harp Concerto in B Flat Major	HAENDEL GEORG FRIEDRICH
Habanera	BIZET GEORGES
Moonlight Serenade	MILLER GLENN (US 1)
Old Phone	Produced by Toshiba
Flash News	Produced by Toshiba
Electronic Sound 1	Produced by Toshiba
Electronic Sound 2	Produced by Toshiba
Electronic Sound 3	Produced by Toshiba
Electronic Sound 4	Produced by Toshiba
Voice 1	Produced by Toshiba
Voice 2	Produced by Toshiba
Voice 3	Produced by Toshiba
Voice 4	Produced by Toshiba
Alarm Clock	Produced by Toshiba
Pigeon	Produced by Toshiba

Default Settings

Messaging

Function	Default Setting
Message Box	Wide View: Wide View ON, Folder View: Folder View, Received/Sent: Separate View, Display Items: Addresses, Change View: List Only, Sort Setting: None (except Ku-man and Idokoro), Security Lock: Unlock, Auto-delete (Received: Set, Sent: Set)
Display	Font Size: Medium-Small, Scroll Unit: Line, Show Address (Main Display: Show All, Ext. Display: Show All)
Creating	Signature: No Signature, Default Type: SMS, Notify Type: Show
Sending	Confirmation: Show, Vibration: ON, DeliveryCheck: Do not Ask, Expiry (SMS: Not Specified, S! Mail: Not Specified), Priority: Normal, Delivery Time: Immediate, Reply to: OFF, Message Ctr: Number on USIM Card
Receiving	Retrieve Mode (Home: Immediate, Roaming: Immediate), Auto-extract (Picture: Show, Sound: Mute), Anti-Spam (Sort Messages: Do not Sort, Select Folder: Folder 17)
3D Pictograms	Auto Play: OFF, Colors: Color1
3D Mail	ON

Yahoo! Keitai

Function	Default Setting	
Settings	Font Size: Medium-Small (Yahoo! Keitai)/Extra-Small (PC Browser), Scroll Unit: 1 line, Downloads (Images: Download, Sounds: Download), Warning (PC Browser: Show, Yahoo! Keitai: Show)	
	Security	Manufacture #: Send, Send Referer: Send, Cookie: Enable, Script: Ask Once (Yahoo! Keitai)/Enable (PC Browser), Authentica...: Per Session, Session Info.: Show
	Storage: Phone Memory	

Entertainment

Function	Default Setting
S! Quick News	Auto Refresh (Flash News: Manual, News: Manual, S! Loop: Manual), Image: Show
Weather	Indicator: Show, Prompt: Show
Ku-man's Room	Ku-man Data: Thumbnail View

TV

Function	Default Setting
Watching TV	Subtitles: ON, Switch Audio: Main, Screen Settings: (Brightness: Brightness 3, Image Quality: Normal, Sharpness: Soft, Economy Mode: OFF), Datacasting (Start Comm.: Ask before, Go to Secured: Ask before, Access Memory: Do not Ask, Send Location: Always Ask, Manufacture #: Do not Send, Storage: Phone Memory), Off-timer: OFF, Output Settings: Speaker/Earphone, First View: Full Screen, Volume: VOL12

Camera

Function	Default Setting
Taking Pictures	Camera Mode: Mobile, Picture Size (Mobile: W240×H400, Digital: W1280×H960), Brush Up (Mobile: ON, Digital: OFF), Self-view: OFF, Night: OFF, Multi Shots: OFF, Add Frame: OFF, Icons Display: Show, Storage: Phone Memory, File Name: Date&Time, Auto Save: OFF, Quality: Fine, Effects: OFF, Date Stamp: OFF, Date Stamp Color: White w/Black, Mobile Light: OFF, White Balance: Auto, Color Control: Neutral, Delay Timer: OFF, Focus Mode: Auto, Grid: OFF, Flicker: Automatic, Shutter Sound: Pattern 1, Key Shortcut: ON, Exposure: ±0.0EV

<table>
<tr><th>Function</th><th colspan="2">Default Setting</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Recording Videos</td><td colspan="2">Video Mode: Video Mail, Self-view: OFF, ScreenDisplay: Normal screen, Icons Display: Show, Voice Record: ON, Storage: Phone Memory, File Name: Date&Time, Auto Save (Video: ON (Fixed), Video Mail/Short Video: OFF)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Quality</td><td>Video: Normal, Video Mail: Normal, Short Video: Economy (Fixed)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Effects: OFF, Mobile Light: OFF, White Balance: Auto, Color Control: Neutral, Delay Timer: OFF, Flicker: Automatic, Start/End: Pattern 1, Key Shortcut: ON, Preview: ON, Exposure: ±0.0EV</td></tr>
<tr><td>Scan Data</td><td colspan="2">Exposure: ±0.0EV</td></tr>
</table>

S! Appli

Function	Default Setting
Settings	Screensaver: OFF, Start Time: 3 sec, Calls&Alarms (Voice Call: Pause Apps, Video Call: Pause Apps, Message: Continue Apps, Alarm: Pause Apps), Volume: Level 3, Backlight (ON/OFF: Same as Phone, Blink: ON), Vibration: ON

Tools

Function	Default Setting	
Alarms	Tone: Time Reading, Volume: Level 3, Vibration: OFF, Duration: 60 sec, Image: Original, Repeat: Once, Snooze: OFF	
Calculator	Set Tax Rate: 5%	
Calendar	Create Event	Set Alarm: OFF, Show/Hide: Show, Repeat for: Do not Repeat, Category: No Category
	Set Holiday (Sunday: Red, Monday to Friday: Black, Saturday: Blue)	
	Reminder	Reminder: OFF, Schedule for: Today, Tone: Pattern 1, Volume: Level 3, Vibration: OFF, Duration: 60 sec, Repeat: Once
	Calendar Lock: Unlock, First View: Monthly, Font Color: White w/Black	
Tasks	New Task	Set Alarm: OFF, Show/Hide: Show, Priority: Normal, Status: Not Completed
	Change View: All View, Sort by: Deadline	
	Reminder	Reminder: OFF, Schedule for: Today, Tone: Pattern 1, Volume: Level 3, Vibration: OFF, Duration: 60 sec, Repeat: Once
	Tasks Lock: Unlock	

Function	Default Setting
Time Table	BG Color: OFF, Font Color: White w/Black
Kitchen Timer	10 sec
Voice Recorder	SelectStorage: Phone Memory
Photo Stand	ON/OFF: OFF, Templates: Calendar, Image: Preset, Duration: 60 min
Osaifu-Keitai® (Card Settings)	IC Card Lock: OFF, Mail Lock (ON/OFF: OFF, Notification: Send, Address: To Sender), Call Lock (ON/OFF: OFF, Missed Count: 3 times), Interface (Browser, Messaging, Vibration, Notification, S! Appli): ON, Display Balance: OFF
S! GPS Navi	Map URL Settings: NAVITIME (http://map.navitime.jp), Set Navi Appli: NAVITIME, Positioning Lock: OFF, LocationProperty: Always Ask

Data Folder

Function	Default Setting
Data Folder	Change View (View Type: Thumbnail 3×3/Thumbnail 5×5 (My Pictograms folder only), Sort by: From Latest), Security Lock: OFF

Media Player

Function	Default Setting
Audio	Sort by (All Music: From Latest, Artist: Title: A to Z, Album: Track No., Folder: Title: A to Z), Output Settings: Speaker/Earphone, Player Image: Original, Play Mode: All, Surround: OFF, Equalizer: Flat, Voice Cancel: OFF
Videos	Display Link: ON

Communications

Function	Default Setting
Friend Status	My Status: Offline, Request Reply: Always Answer, Answer Status (Calls: Answer OK, Mail: Reply OK, S! Circle Talk: Join OK), Status Setting: ごきげん (Good mood)
Circle Talk	Loud Speaker: ON

Phone Book

Function	Default Setting
Phone Book	Search Mode: Tab/Reading
Options	ExternalLight: Same as Phone, Ringtone Vol.: Same as Phone, Ringtone: Same as Phone, Vibration: Same as Phone, Duration: Same as Phone, MessageFolder: None, Secret: OFF, Ext. Display: Same as Phone
Options (Group)	ExternalLight: Same as Phone, Ringtone Vol.: Same as Phone, Ringtone: Same as Phone, Vibration: Same as Phone, Duration: Same as Phone, MessageFolder: None
Addr. Bkup	Auto Sync: OFF, Sync Type: Synchronize
Settings	Select Storage: Phone Memory, Phone Book Lock: Unlock

Settings

Sounds

Function	Default Setting	
Kacha-ble	MissedCall: ON, Messages: ON, Delivery: ON, Missed: ON, Missed CT: ON, Status: ON	
Normal Mode	Incoming	Ringtone: Pattern 1, Ringtone Vol.: Level 3, Vibration (Pattern): OFF, Feeling: ON, Duration: 5 sec
	Sound Vol.: Level 3, Earpiece Vol.: Level 5, Speaker Vol.: Level 5, Battery: ON	
	Sound Effects	Tone Type: Original (Keypad Tone: Original 1), Tone Volume: Level 1 (Keypad Tone: Silent)
Manner Mode	Manner Mode: Unset, Switch Mode: Silent	
	Silent	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: Pattern 1, Feeling: Same as Normal Mode, Sound Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Answering Machine: Same as Normal Mode
	Alarms	Ringtone Vol. (Except alarm volume): Silent, Vibration: Pattern 1, Alarms (Alarms: Same as Normal Mode, Alarm Volume: Same as Normal Mode, Vibration: Same as Normal mode), Feeling: Same as Normal Mode, Sound Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Answering Machine: Same as Normal Mode

Function	Default Setting	
Manner Mode (Continued)	Drive	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: OFF, Feeling: OFF, Sound Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Answering Machine: ON
	Original 1 to 3	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: Pattern 1, Feeling: ON, Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Answering Machine: ON

Display/Idle Screen (Ku-man)

Function	Default Setting
Idle Screen	Wallpaper: Preset (Picture), Others: 1-line Digit, Active Window: ON (Manual), Ext. Display: Icon+Clock
Main Screens	Deco (Icons): Original, Deco (Windows): Original, In-Calls: Original, Messages: Original, Download: Original, Power On: Original, Power Off: Original
Mini Tool	Mini Tool: Preset
Caller Details	Picture: ON, Ext. Display: ON
Wide View	IdleScreen: ON, Create Msg: ON, Msg Lists: ON
Font Settings	Font Type: Gothic, Font Size (General: Medium, Messaging: Medium-Small, Mobile Web: Medium-Small, PC Browser: Extra-Small, Text Entry: Medium-Small), Font Color: Pattern 1

Function	Default Setting	
Backlight	Power Saving: 15 sec, Start Illumi (Color: Turquoise, Lighting Time: 5 sec), Displays (Lighting Time: 5 sec, Brightness: Brightness 3), Media Player: Always ON	
External Light	Notification	Missed Call: Garnet, Messages: Emerald, DeliveryCheck: Sapphire, Missed Call: Amethyst, Missed CT: Blue Topaz, Friend Status: Citrine
	Incoming	Voice Call: Garnet, Video Call: Emerald, Message (Color: Sapphire, Feeling: ON), DeliveryCheck: Amethyst, Missed Call: Citrine, Circle Talk: Blue Topaz, Friend Status: Citrine
Twinkle Light	Settings	Voice Call: Wave 4, Video Call: Wave 4, Message: Wink 4, Delivery: Wink 4, Opening: Sparkle 4, Closing: Sparkle 4, In Call: Dance 4, Side Key: Veil 4
	Design Light	Rename: Original 1 to 8, Create Color: Green 15 and Red 0, Pattern: Wave 1
Operator Name	OFF	
Idle Screen (Ku-man)	OFF	

Phone Settings

Function	Default Setting
Clock	12hour/24hour: 24 hour, World Clock (City 1: Tokyo, City 2: Tokyo, Set as Main City: City 1, DST ON/OFF: OFF)
Sub Menu View	Show
言語選択 (Language)	日本語 (Japanese)
Navigation Keys	: Active Window, : Phone Book, : Dialed Numbers, : Received Calls
Side Key	Manner Mode

Security

Function	Default Setting
Password Lock	Phone Closed: OFF, Power Saving: OFF, Power Off: OFF
Function Lock	Phone Book: Unlock, Calendar: Unlock, Tasks: Unlock, Call Log: Unlock, Message Log: Unlock
Secret Mode	Hide
Anti-Spam	Sort Messages: Do not Sort, Select Folder: Folder 17
Change Password	9999
IP Service	ON
Restricted Mode	Web: OFF

Call Settings

Function	Default Setting	
Intl. Calls	SelectNetwork: 3G	
	Intl. Code: 0046010	
	CountryNumber	Japan (81), UK (44), Italy (39), Switzerland (41), Spain (34), Germany (49), Portugal (351), Netherlands (31), France (33), Monaco (377), USA (1), Sweden (46), Australia (61), China (86), Hong Kong (852), Taiwan (886), South Korea (82)
	Operator: Automatic	
Ans Machine	Setting: OFF, Set Duration: 18 sec	
Earphone Mike	Auto Answer (ON/OFF: OFF, Set Duration: 10 sec), Earphone Call: OFF, Select Mike: Earphone Mike	
Answer Type	Open to Talk: OFF, Any Keys: OFF	
Video Call	Alt. Picture: OFF, Image Quality: Standard, Hold Setting (Hold on Call: Preset, Hold Answer: Preset), Mute: OFF, Loud Speaker: ON, Auto Answer: OFF, Self-view: OFF	
Reject Calls	Specific #s: OFF, Unknown: OFF, Withheld: OFF, Payphone: OFF, Unavailable: OFF	
Offline Mode	OFF	
Show My Number	OFF	

Connectivity

Function	Default Setting
Bluetooth®	ON/OFF: OFF, Settings (Visibility: Show, Set Handsfree: Private)
Infrared	ON/OFF: OFF
USB	Connection: Always Ask, Battery: ON

Priority

Function	Default Setting
Mid-operation	Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue
Video	Message: Continue, DeliveryCheck: Continue
Media Player	Pause
Voice Recorder	Message: Continue, DeliveryCheck: Continue
S! Appli	Voice Call: Pause Apps, Video Call: Pause Apps, Message: Continue Apps, Alarm: Pause Apps
Circle Talk	Continue
TV	Alarm: Pause

Text Entry

Function	Default Setting
Custom Window	Display: Display
Clear Setting	Delete
Input Method	Standard
Font Size	Medium-Small
Prediction	Predict Text: ON, Phrase: ON

Active Window

Function	Default Setting
ON/OFF	ON (Manual)
Templates	News: No Image
Auto Refresh	Flash News: Manual, News: Manual, S! Loop: Manual
Unread/Read	Show All
Screen Speed	Neutral

Glossary

Term	Description
3G	A third generation (3G) mobile communication system.
GSM	A wireless communication system for digital mobile phones. GSM is predominant in Europe and Asia, and is the world's most widely used system.
GPRS	A data transmission technique using GSM mobile phone networks. It enables high-speed transfer of data in the form of packets.
USIM Card	Use handset with this card inserted. The card stores subscriber information such as your phone number and handset data. You can also save Phone Book entries and other data to the card. When you replace your handset, use of the same USIM Card in the new handset enables you to continue using the data stored on the card.
USIM PIN	A number required for using USIM Card with your handset. This number allows you to prevent others from using your handset in the event that your handset is lost or stolen.
S! Mail	A service that allows long text messages with picture, video and melody attachments to be exchanged.
SMS	A service that allows short text messages to be exchanged between handsets.

Term	Description
SSL	A communication method for transmitting data in an encrypted form over the Internet. It enables data such as information related to privacy and credit card numbers to be sent and received safely and protects against dangers on the Internet such as eavesdropping, tampering and spoofing. SSL communication uses server certificates.
Server Certificate	A digital certificate for identifying that a site on a server is trustworthy. The server certificate includes information necessary for SSL communication (encrypted communication), server information and a digital signature of a Certificate Authority to verify that the server is authentic.
Cache	The location in handset for temporarily storing the data of accessed Web pages, etc.
S! Appli	Applications including games and 3D images that can be downloaded from the Web pages of S! Appli providers. Some applications connect to the network to obtain information in real time and some applications can be activated as wallpaper.
FeliCa	Contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. It allows data to be exchanged by simply holding an IC card up to a reader device. 830T handset is capable of managing multiple types of data, so it can be used for such things as e-money and a membership card.
3G HighSpeed	A high speed data communication service that complies with HSDPA (High Speed Downlink Packet Access) protocol.

Alphabetic Order

Numeric

A

B

E

F

L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

Y

Z

By User Action

A

B

C

D

E

F

S

T

U

W

Warranty

A warranty card is included with handset. Carefully read the card and check that the store name and purchase date sections have been filled in correctly. Then, store it in a safe place.

- SoftBank and Toshiba assume no responsibility for damages to you or third parties as a result of a failure, malfunction or faulty operation of the product.

After Sales Service

Be sure to refer to "Troubleshooting" (page 14-7) before submitting your handset for repair.
If you are still having problems with your handset, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank General Information (page 14-48).

Repair within Warranty Period

Repair is carried out in accordance with the conditions of the warranty.

Repair After Warranty Period

Repair is carried out if possible and the handset owner is responsible for any repair costs.

- During repair, parts may be replaced with used parts that meet our quality standards.
- Data and settings may be lost or altered as a result of failure or repair of your handset. It is, therefore, recommended that you keep a backup copy of important data such as Phone Book data. SoftBank and Toshiba assume no responsibility for any damages due to the loss or alteration of handset data (contents of Phone Book, Data Folder, etc.) and settings as a result of failure or repair of your handset.
- Disassembling or modifying handset is in violation of Radio Law. Your handset will not be accepted for repairs if it has been modified.

Customer Service

If you have any questions about SoftBank handsets or services, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Customer Centers
From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at 157 for General Information or 113 for Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Global Call Center
From outside Japan, dial **+81-3-5351-3491** (Please take care to dial the correct number. International charges will apply to this call.)

Call These Numbers Toll Free from Landlines

Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	Free Call 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	Free Call 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	Free Call 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	Free Call 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	Free Call 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	Free Call 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	Free Call 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	Free Call 0088-250-113

SoftBank 830T Instruction Manual

December 2008, First Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

* For additional information, please visit a SoftBank Shop.

Model: SoftBank 830T

Manufacturer: TOSHIBA CORPORATION

モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルにご協力を。

Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands).

* Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.

* Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.